101 Attacking Ideas in Chess

Aggressive concepts from a grandmaster's arsenal

Joe Gallagher
101 Attacking Ideas in Chess

Joe Gallagher
## Contents

Symbols  
Introduction

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idea</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Back-Rank Mates</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Smothered Mate</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Lethal Knight Checks</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>A Deadly Set-Up</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Anastasia, Boden and Marco</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Some Standard Mates on the h-file</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>The Greek Gift</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Some ♖xf7 Sacrifices</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Rook and Knight Tandem</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>♗d5 can Embarrass a Queen on a5</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>The Fishbone Pawn</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>♖xh6!</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>More Mates on the Dark Squares</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>The See-saw and Friends</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Point Your Bishops in the Right Direction</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>♖xf7!</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Exploiting Pins</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Legall and Friends</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>h7 (h2) Still Under Fire</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>f5: A Dangerous Square</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Standard Rook Sacrifices</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Inviting Everyone to the Party</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>The King’s Gambit</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>The King’s Gambit (2)</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Typical Exchange Sacrifices</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Attack at the Weakest Point</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Rooks’ Pawns can also be Used in a Positional Manner</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>More about a4</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Preventive Sacrifices</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Pawn-Grabbing</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Approach Play</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>The King in the Middlegame</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Get Yourself a Pet</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Get Yourself a Pet (2)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Minority Attack</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Idea 36 The Exchange Sacrifice: Hodgson Style  52
Idea 37 Line-Opening Sacrifices  53
Idea 38 The Greatest King-Hunt Ever?  54
Idea 39 More about Wandering Kings  55
Idea 40 The Pawn-Storm  56
Idea 41 Opposite-Coloured Bishops can be a Trump  57
Idea 42 Blitz Chess: The Perfect Testing Ground  58
Idea 43 The Benoni Breakthrough  59
Idea 44 The King's Indian Blockade  60
Idea 45 The Keres Attack  61
Idea 46 More Keres Attack  62
Idea 47 d5 Sacrifices in the Sicilian  63
Idea 48 Originality Pays  64
Idea 49 Surprising Castling  65
Idea 50 Snap Mates in the Endgame  66
Idea 51 Liberating the King's Indian Bishop  67
Idea 52 Pawn Promotion  68
Idea 53 The Magic of Mikhail Tal  69
Idea 54 Develop Your Imagination with Studies  70
Idea 55 Be Flexible  71
Idea 56 Attack Where it's Relevant  72
Idea 57 More Sacrifices in the Sicilian  73
Idea 58 Three Pieces vs Queen  74
Idea 59 Pawn-Storm Chat  75
Idea 60 The Exchange Sacrifice: Petrosian Style  76
Idea 61 Ivanchuk  77
Idea 62 Destructive Knights  78
Idea 63 Clogging up Black's Development with e5-e6  79
Idea 64 Two Pieces Can be Worth a Queen  80
Idea 65 The Fantasy Variation  81
Idea 66 A Knight is Superb Protection for an Exposed King  83
Idea 67 One Idea Leads to Another  84
Idea 68 Mutual Pawn-Storms in Action  85
Idea 69 He Who Dares Wins  86
Idea 70 A Rook Can Defeat Minor Pieces  87
Idea 71 Get Them Bishops Working  88
Idea 72 Swinging Rooks  89
Idea 73 Zwischenzug  90
Idea 74 Pawn Play: More Line-Opening  91
Idea 75 Don't Wait to be Squashed  92
Idea 76 Draw? Never!  93
Idea 77 Under-Promotion  94
Idea 78 Tie Them Down  95
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idea</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>79</td>
<td>The Exchange Sacrifice: Sicilian Style</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>More About Rooks</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81</td>
<td>Irritating the Dragon</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>82</td>
<td>Develop Your Sense of Danger</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>Queenside Attacks – The Prophylactic $\text{Ke1} (...\text{Ke8})$</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>84</td>
<td>More About Opposite-Coloured Bishops</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>85</td>
<td>Queen Sacrifices in the KID</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>Fun Against the Winawer</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>More About 5 dxc5</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>88</td>
<td>Necessity is the Mother of Invention</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>89</td>
<td>The Sting in the Tail</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>More about the Bishops</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91</td>
<td>A Trip to Planet Shirov</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>92</td>
<td>The Game That Had it All</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>93</td>
<td>Stalemates</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>94</td>
<td>Transformation of Advantages</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>95</td>
<td>“Take My Rooks!”</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96</td>
<td>The Surprising g2-g4!?</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>97</td>
<td>Attacking Empty Squares</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>98</td>
<td>$\text{Ac4}!?$ Against the Sicilian</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>99</td>
<td>Use Modern Technology</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Don’t Get Dejected</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Knight Time</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Additional Information</strong></td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Index of Themes, Players and Openings</td>
<td>126</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Symbols

+ check
++ double check
# checkmate
!! brilliant move
! good move
!? interesting move
?! dubious move
? bad move
?? blunder
+- White is winning
± White is much better
± White is slightly better
= equal position
½ Black is slightly better
½ Black is much better
+- Black is winning
Ch championship
Cht team championship
Wch world championship
Ech European championship
Ct candidates event
IZ interzonal event
Z zonal event
OL olympiad
ECC European Clubs Cup
jr junior event
wom women’s event
mem memorial event
rpd rapidplay game
corr correspondence game
1-0 the game ends in a win for White
½-½ the game ends in a draw
0-1 the game ends in a win for Black
(n) nth match game
(11a) see diagram 11a (etc.)
Introduction

Content and Layout

What constitutes an Attacking Idea? Well, I believe that most people would associate the word ‘attack’ in chess with combinations and direct attacks on the king; consequently a large part of the book is devoted to these topics. Of course one can also attack on the queenside or conduct positional attacks, so some material is devoted to these but it would be fair to say that they are in a distinct minority. An Attacking Idea entitled, for example, ‘Carving out an outpost on d5’ would have been perfectly legitimate but also taken us too far afield into the positional elements. This is not a large book and with limited space I had to make my choice.

An initial perusal of the book may give one the impression that the material is placed in a rather random order ... and, apart from the first twenty or so Ideas, this would be a correct impression. This is not because I was feeling particularly lazy but because I prefer it that way. To have, for example, four successive Ideas dealing with the exchange sacrifice followed by three on the pawn-storm could be quite overbearing and would present a more serious text-book type image than I wish to project. Therefore the material is spread relatively randomly throughout the book. This allows those who just want a quiet read to have just that, while those wishing to study specific themes can find them easily enough using the index. Exceptions have been made for the opening Ideas, which do follow one another, and for Ideas that are actually a continuation of the previous one.

So, the only really structured material in this book is Ideas 1-21. If there were chapter headings, then this section would have been called ‘The Arsenal’. It contains standard attacking ideas, combinations and ploys that all strong players have in their tactical armoury. These ideas should become second nature to you, or simply ‘routine’ as Tal called a lot of his sacrifices. Of course, what might have been routine for Tal was not necessarily routine for anyone else, but the more ideas one has in one’s arsenal then the stronger one is becoming. By the end of the book you will also, hopefully, be able to add some of Ideas 22-101 into your armoury, thereby freeing up your imagination to tackle more complex situations. Of course strong players also have a positional arsenal, but that is another story.

In this ‘Arsenal’ I have not striven for particularly attractive examples (though there are some) but concentrated more on the basic ingredients involved that make the combination work. Often the discussion revolves around defensive ploys and occasions when the sacrifice doesn’t work. These are also essential knowledge for the attacker so that he can correctly judge whether the intended
Idea 1 – Back-Rank Mates

Chess cemeteries are littered with the corpses of players who have stumbled into back-rank mates. Initially we are taught to create a bolt-hole for the king to protect against such disasters. As we improve, though, we also learn that we should not create unnecessary weaknesses in the king’s position. Even when such a pawn move can hardly be called weakening, the battle for the initiative may not allow time to play h3 or ...h6. Therefore, we must always remain alert to back-rank tactics. Here are some examples:

(a) E.Adams-C.Torre, New Orleans 1920 is one of the legendary back-rankers, notwithstanding any doubts concerning its authenticity, and it contains essential ideas for your tactical armoury. In practice, they often arise in less complex forms (e.g. if we alter the diagram slightly by removing the rooks on e1 and c8 and by replacing the bishop on f6 with a knight on h5 then 1 g4! still wins, but this time just a piece). White wins by 18 g4! b5 (18...xg4 19 xe8+ and mate; 18...xe2 19 xd7 is no good for Black – the knight on f3 helps defend his own back row) 19 c4!! (beautifully exploiting the fact that both the black rook and queen are tied down to the defence of their colleague on e8; note that each white move carries a decisive threat so Black has no time to deal with his bank-rank problem) 19...d7 20 c7!! (same again) 20...b5 21 a4! (the immediate 21 xb7?? would actually lose to 21...xe2!) 21...xa4 (1b) (now 21...xe2 22 xe2 is no good for Black) 22 e4! b5 23 xb7!. With 23...xe2 no longer possible, the black queen has run out of squares, and is lost.

(b) Karpov-Kasparov, New York/Lyons Wch (17) 1990. Black has been attempting to relieve the pressure on his position by...
systematically exchanging pieces. His previous move, 25...\textit{e}8-c8, offered an exchange on the c-file. Karpov is happy to exchange rooks, but only on his terms. 26 \textit{c}6! may not have surprised Kasparov but he must have realized pretty quickly that the game was up. The point is that after 26...\textit{x}c6 27 \textit{d}xc6 \textit{w}xc6 28 \textit{w}d8+ \textit{f}8 29 \textit{h}6 Black is mated and if he doesn’t take on c6 White gains control of the only open file on the board. After the further moves 26...\textit{e}5 27 \textit{c}3! \textit{b}8 28 \textit{w}d4 \textit{f}6 29 \textit{a}5 \textit{d}6 30 \textit{w}c3 White had a strategically won game. An extremely common mating theme and a good example of how top positional players use tactics to control the game.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{Gallagher-Habibi, Mendrisio 1998.}
Black’s position may not be very attractive but it’s hard to imagine he’s about to be back-rank mated. However, after 23 g5 \textit{h}5 24 \textit{x}g7+ \textit{x}g7 (otherwise \textit{x}h5 wins) 25 \textit{w}xg6! he resigned as 25...hxg6 26 \textit{h}8# is mate and other moves are hopeless.
\item \textit{A.Mikenas-Bronstein, USSR Ch 1965.} Bronstein produced a move of rare beauty: 24...\textit{x}a3!! and White resigned. All three captures lead to mate on the back rank, as does 25 \textit{w}f1 \textit{xa}1 26 \textit{xa}1 \textit{we}1+.
\item \textit{Lutz-Gallagher, Biel 1995.} White played 25 \textit{d}5? \textit{xd}5 26 \textit{ex}d5 but after 26...\textit{g}5 27 \textit{al} f5! Black had taken control of the game (0-1, 40). What had White overlooked? The answer is that he thought 26...\textit{g}5 was impossible owing to 27 \textit{g}4, when after 27...\textit{cl}+ 28 \textit{f}1 White just wins the exchange. However, Black plays 27...\textit{e}4! 28 \textit{xe}4 (28 \textit{xe}4 \textit{cl}+) 28...\textit{f}5! winning a piece as, although 29 \textit{xf}5 \textit{xf}5! 30 \textit{e}8+ \textit{xe}8 31 \textit{xf}5 wins the queen, 31...\textit{e}1# is mate.
\end{itemize}
Idea 2 – Smothered Mate

(2a) This is a basic example of a smothered mate. White wins by 1 \text{Wb3+ } \text{h8} 2 \text{f7+} \text{g8} 3 \text{h6++ } \text{h8} 4 \text{g8+! } \text{xg8} 5 \text{f7#}. The essential ingredients are Black’s missing (or advanced) f-pawn and the inability to block the queen check. This last point is important to bear in mind if you are about to embark on a string of sacrifices culminating in smothered mate.

Make sure you double-check if it seems your opponent has fallen for a smothered mate trick. I once seconded a player, who will probably prefer to remain nameless, in the European Junior Championship and he produced the following (with Black): 1 \text{c4} \text{g6} 2 \text{c3} \text{g7} 3 \text{g3} \text{d6} 4 \text{g2} \text{f6} 5 \text{d3} \text{0-0} 6 \text{e4} \text{e5} 7 \text{ge2} \text{c6} 8 0-0 \text{a6} 9 \text{f4?!} (our preparation dwelt on the superior 9 h3 but I pointed out 9 f4 \text{b6+} followed by ...\text{g4} – it didn’t seem necessary to go into any more detail) 9...\text{b6+} 10 \text{h1} \text{g4} 11 \text{a4?!} (11 \text{e1} is better) 11...\text{f2+} 12 \text{g1} \text{h3++} (12...\text{xd1+} 13 \text{xb6 axb6} 14 \text{xd1} \text{g4} is good for Black) 13 \text{h1} (2b) 13...\text{g1+??} and Black resigned before White could play 14 \text{g1!} – the rook on f1 still stops the mate. These things can be overlooked in the excitement of battle.

The other main danger for prospective smothered maters is the exchange sacrifice on f2 (f7). One should always ensure that the queen has a safe passage home or that the opponent can’t gain enough time attacking it to launch a strong attack.

Although smothered mates usually take place in the corner, there are exceptions. Diagram 2c is from Young-Doré, Boston 1892. The final position after 19 \text{f7+ } \text{e8} 20 \text{d6++ } \text{d8} 21 \text{e8+! } \text{xex8} 22 \text{f7#} is extremely picturesque.
Idea 3 – Lethal Knight Checks

As a young player I was most impressed by the finish to the 10th game of the 1966 Petrosian-Spassky World Championship match (3a). Instead of the obvious 30 Qxf7, when White still has some work to do, Petrosian forced resignation by 30 Wh8+! because after 30...gxh8 31 Qxf7+ and 32 Qxg5 he emerges with an extra piece.

When in Gallagher-Curran, Lyons 1993 I reached the position in diagram 3b my thought-processes had already been reduced to making the Petrosian trick work. Play continued 21 Wd2 Qf6 22 Rf4! (disguising the planned combination by blocking the queen’s path to h6) 22...Qd7? (thank you God) 23 Rxf7+! Rxh7 24 Wh6+! Qg8 25 Wh8+! and Black resigned as 25...Qxh8 26 Qxf7+ Qg7 27 Qxh6 leaves White two pawns to the good. Note that after 21 Wd2 White was not actually threatening the combination as at this stage Black’s queen is still defended.

It is of course not necessary to use a whole queen as a decoy – there are many similar examples to the above based on the moves 1 Wh8+ Qxh8 2 Qxf7+. The following is a closely related idea where the king is again lured onto the mined square:

(3c) Beliavsky-Bacrot, Albert (2) 1999. This six-game match had only one decisive game and it was a tragedy for the young French champion. He played 15...Qxb2?! (15...cxb2 looks better) 16 Wa4 Wb5?? only to resign after 17 Rxd8+ as 17...Qxd8 18 Qxc6+ costs him his queen.
Idea 4 – A Deadly Set-Up

(4a) Gallagher-Damljanović, Bern 1989. Black has just played 36...e3, fearing neither 37 \texttt{wxh7+} nor 37 \texttt{gxh7+} as his king runs away via f8. 37 \texttt{wh6!} came as a shock, though, as now his escape-route is shut off. The immediate threat is 38 \texttt{gxh7+ \texttt{gh8} 39 \texttt{f6+! gh8} 40 \texttt{wh7+} \texttt{xf7#} so Black must defend the f7-square, which he did with 37...\texttt{dd6}. There followed 38 \texttt{gxh7+ \texttt{gh8}} with one of the deadliest set-ups in chess. White controls virtually every light square on the board. In this case he still needs to be accurate as Black's e-pawn provides counterplay. The solution is 39 \texttt{cc1!} (inviting everyone to the party) 39...\texttt{e2} 40 \texttt{f5+! gh8} 41 \texttt{wh7+ \texttt{f8} 42 \texttt{wh8+} 1-0. 42...\texttt{e7} 43 \texttt{c7+ \texttt{d8} 44 \texttt{d7+ \texttt{c8} 45 \texttt{wxe8+ \texttt{exe8} 46 \texttt{xg4+ \texttt{c7} 47 \texttt{exe4}} and the pawn is stopped.

Black's chances to save the game against the queen on h6 and bishop on h7 are limited. His main hope is that White will have given up so much material that he will have nothing better than perpetual check. On other occasions Black may be able to challenge the set-up before reinforcements arrive. In diagram 4b, White should take the draw as there is no good discovered check and Black is ready to defend with \texttt{gw7}.

The other main defensive resource is to attack either the queen or bishop. For example, take the shell position \texttt{wwh6,gh7;} \texttt{bgh8,wd5,xf6}. If Black is to move, he plays 1...\texttt{g5}, forcing the queen to retreat, and then the black king can escape with 2...\texttt{g7}.

(4c) Neverov-Kramnik, USSR Ch 1991. Black defended with 27...\texttt{xf8} 28 \texttt{xf5+ \texttt{h7} and went on to win the game.
Idea 5 – Anastasia, Boden and Marco

(5a) White has just played 1 ßd5, inviting Black to capture the b-pawn. This offer should be declined with 1...ßb7. Those of you unfamiliar with ‘Anastasia’s Mate’ may be wondering why Black doesn’t take the pawn. The answer is 1...ßxb3? 2 ße7+! ßh8 3 ßc3! and after Black moves his queen, 4 ßxh7+! ßxh7 5 ßh3#. The key ingredient is the knight on e7 covering both g8 and g6. A knight on this square (or one which has access to this square) should be automatically associated with Anastasia’s Mate in your mind.

(5b) Schulder-Boden, London 1853. White now played the natural-looking 13 0-0-0? only to be punished by 13...d5! 14 ßxd5 (14 ßxd5 is the same) 14...ßxc3+!! 15 bxc3 ßa3# (0-1). This created quite a stir and ever since has been known as Boden’s Mate. It is most often seen in Caro-Kann type positions where Black has castled long – he usually has a knight on d7 and a rook on d8 to hem in his king while White has one bishop patrolling the h2-b8 diagonal, and the other ready to spring into a6 and a major piece ready to lay down its life on c6.

One of the first things we learn as chessplayers is how to mate with two rooks against a king. Even in the middlegame we have to be alert to the possibility of a sacrifice forcing a double rook mate. Diagram 19c features the double rook mate in its simplest form, while diagram 5c is from an off-hand game by M. Marco in 1898. White won by 1 ßc6+! bxc6 2 ßxa7+ ßxa7 3 ßa1+ ßb6 4 ßb1+ ßc5 5 ßa5#. In slightly altered circumstances 2 ßb1+ ßa8 3 ßxa7+ ßxa7 4 ßb2, intending ßa1#, could have been the solution. Here this fails to 4...ßc5 5 ßa1+ ßa6.
Idea 6 – Some Standard Mates on the h-file

Quite a large portion of attacks take place on the h-file, which is not very surprising as this is the file next to the castled king. Such attacks can be seen throughout the book but here are three examples of mates which must be in your offensive arsenal.

(6a) Black has a mate threat that cannot be parried directly, but if White is to play, he wins with 1 $h8+$ $xh8$ 2 $h1+$ $g8$ 3 $h7#$. This is an extremely important tactical idea and would of course also work if we stuck another white rook on $g1$ – then the solution would be 1 $h8+$ $xh8$ 2 $h1+$ $g8$ 3 $h8+$ $xh8$ 4 $h1+$ and mate. If the black rook were removed from $f8$ and placed, for example, on $f6$, then it is possible that the combination would fail as the king could run away – here, however, it still works: 1 $h8+$ $xh8$ 2 $h1+$ $g8$ 3 $h7+$ $f8$ 4 $h8+$ $e7$ 5 $xg7+$ $d8$ 6 $d7#$. The details must be worked out at the board.

(6b) In this typical Dragon position, if White is to play, he forces mate by means of 1 $h8+$ $xh8$ 2 $h6$. With Black to move, he should play something like 1...$c8$, with good compensation for the exchange as the combination no longer works.

(6c) J. Hall-de Firmian, Malmö 1999: 20 $d3!$ 1-0. It took me some time to work out this resignation. After 20...$xb7$ 21 $h7+$ $f8$, my first reaction was 22 $h8+$ $e7$ 23 $f6+$ $d7$ 24 $xf7+$ $e7$ doesn’t work and then I thought I’d found it: 22 exd6 but no, after 22...$xe2+$ the black king will be able to walk away via $e8$. The solution is very simple as long as you see that the black king can’t run away. After 22 $h6+$! Black is mated next move.
Idea 7 – The Greek Gift

One of the first standard combinations most of us become acquainted with is known as the Greek Gift (after Greco). Essential ingredients are a bishop sacrifice on h7 followed by a knight check on g5 and a queen that is ready to threaten mate on h7. For example, in diagram 7a there is 1 \( \text{hxh7+!} \) \( \text{gxh7} \) 2 \( \text{gxg5+} \) and now:

1) 2 ... \( \text{gxg8} \) 3 \( \text{wh5 e8} \) (forced) 4 \( \text{wh7+} \) \( \text{xf8} \) 5 \( \text{wh8+} \) \( \text{gxg8} \) 6 \( \text{hxh7+} \) \( \text{e7} \) 7 \( \text{gxg5+} \), when 7 ... f6 8 \( \text{gxg7#} \) is mate and 7 ... f6 is most simply met by 8 \( \text{gxg7} \). Note that in slightly altered circumstances 4 \( \text{xf7+} \) may have been stronger. Concrete factors dictate the solution.

2) 2 ... \( \text{gh6} \) is obviously not possible here but if White didn’t have a bishop on the c1-h6 diagonal it would be another defensive option to take into account.

3) 2 ... \( \text{ag6} \) (7b) is often the critical test of the Greek Gift’s soundness. White has a variety of ways to continue the attack, e.g. 3 \( \text{gf4 f5} \) 4 \( \text{xf6} \) (4 \( \text{gf3 f4} \) 5 \( \text{gf4 a5} \) is far from clear as there is no devastating discovered check) 4 ... \( \text{xf6} \) 5 \( \text{hxh7+} \) \( \text{f7} \) 6 \( \text{xf8} \) \( \text{exf8} \) and White has regained some of his material but the attack is history; 3 \( \text{d3+ f5} \) (3 ... \( \text{gf5 4 g4} \) 4 \( \text{wh3} \) is another idea which may work if Black has no good way to stop \( \text{hxh7+} \) – here it fails to 4 ... \( \text{gh8} \). The best move in diagram 7b is 3 \( \text{h4!} \), when 3 ... \( \text{a5} \) loses to 4 h5+ \( \text{gh6} \) 5 \( \text{d3} \) and after 3 ... \( \text{e8} \), which keeps the f8-rook defended, White changes tack and wins by 4 \( \text{g4 f5} \) (4 ... \( \text{gf5} \) 5 h5+ \( \text{gh6} \) 6 \( \text{e4+!} \) \( \text{h7} \) 7 \( \text{h6!} \) wins) 5 h5+ \( \text{gh6} \) 6 \( \text{xe6+} \) followed by 7 \( \text{xf7#} \).

Diagram 7c shows another typical version of the Greek Gift. After 1 \( \text{hxh7+} \) \( \text{hxh7} \) 2 \( \text{gxg5+} \) \( \text{xg5} \) 3 hxg5+ \( \text{gxg8} \) 4 \( \text{wh5 f5} \) 5 g6 Black is mated. This is often a particularly devastating version.
Greek Gift sacrifices are certainly not just a relic from the past. Here's a recent example:

(7d) Shirov-Reinderman, Wijk aan Zee 1999: 22 \( \text{Axh7+ } \text{Bxh7} \) 23 \( \text{Wh4+ } \text{Bg8} \) 24 \( \text{Bg5 } \text{Be8} \) 25 \( \text{Bf3} \) (White could also have given a couple of checks and taken on g7; I suspect that that would have been enough to convince most players to play the original sacrifice but Shirov has an even more powerful idea in mind) 25...\( \text{Be7} \) 26 \( \text{Wh7+ } \text{Bf8} \) 27 \( \text{Wh8+ } \text{Bg8} \) (7e) 28 f5! exf5 29 e6! fxe6 (29...\( \text{Bxe6} \) 30 \( \text{Bh7+ } \text{Be7} \) 31 \( \text{Bg5+} \) is very strong) 30 \( \text{Bg3!} \) (White's pawn sacrifices have weakened Black on the second rank and on his dark squares) 30...\( g6 \) 31 \( \text{Bh7+ } \text{Bf7} \) 32 \( \text{Bh6! } \text{Be7} \) (32...\( \text{Bxe6} \) allows mate in four) 33 \( \text{Bg5+! } \text{Bf7} \) (33...\( \text{Bd6} \) 34 \( \text{Bf4+ e5} \) 35 \( \text{Bxg6+} \) wins) 34 \( \text{Bf6! } \text{Bf8} \) 35 \( \text{Bc7!} \) and White soon won.

Before embarking upon a Greek Gift sacrifice (or deciding to allow one) the following factors must be taken into account:

1) Can Black simply defend the h7-square after he retreats his king to g8, e.g. with ...\( \text{Bf6} \) or ...\( \text{Bf8} \), ...\( \text{Bf5} \) or more deceptively with ...\( \text{Bd3} \) or ...\( \text{Bc2} \) (see 7f)? I once had a rather large chunk of egg on my face after overlooking a ...\( \text{Bc2} \) defence.

2) What's happening if the black king advances? White's main attacking ideas are then based on the advance of the h-pawn, \( \text{Wg4, Bd3+} \) or by feeding extra pieces into the attack.

Regarding Greek Gift sacrifices I tend to work to the rule: if you don't see a refutation then it's worth playing. Fortune favours the Brave.
Idea 8 – Some $\text{xf7}$ Sacrifices

The f7-square is next to the black king and not defended by any other piece, so it is a natural target early in the game. Here are a few standard ideas.

Diagram 8a is reached after the moves 1 e4 g6 2 d4 $\text{g7}$ 3 $\text{f3}^3$ d6 4 $\text{c4}$ $\text{d7}^??$. White wins with 5 $\text{xf7}^+$! $\text{xf7}$ 6 $\text{g5}^+$, as 6...$\text{f8}$ 7 $\text{e6}^+$ and 6...$\text{e8}$ 7 $\text{e6}$ both win the queen, while 6...$\text{f6}$ 7 $\text{f3}^#$ is mate.

A similar idea is known in the Philidor: 1 e4 e5 2 $\text{f3}^3$ d6 3 d4 $\text{f6}$ 4 $\text{c3}$ $\text{bd7}$ 5 $\text{c4}$ $\text{e7}$ 6 $\text{xe5}$ (the immediate 6 $\text{xf7}^+$ is inferior, while White usually just plays 6 0-0) 6...$\text{xe5}$ 7 $\text{xf7}^+$ $\text{xf7}$ 8 $\text{g5}^+$ $\text{g8}$ (after 8...$\text{g6}$ 9 $\text{e6}$ $\text{g8}$ 10 f4! White has good play for the piece – Keres) 9 $\text{e6}$ (note that a queen check on the a2-g8 diagonal would be devastating – this could be the solution in slightly altered circumstances) 9...$\text{e8}$ 10 $\text{xc7}$ $\text{g6}$ 11 $\text{xa8}$ $\text{xg2}$ 12 $\text{f1}$ $\text{c5}$ ($8b$) and the complications eventually lead to an equal game according to Emms in NCO. Always think twice about ...$\text{d7}$ when there is a bishop on c4.

The moves 1 e4 c5 2 $\text{f3}^3$ d6 3 d4 $\text{cxd4}$ 4 $\text{xd4}$ $\text{f6}$ 5 $\text{c3}$ g6 6 $\text{c4}$ $\text{c6}^?!$ 7 $\text{xc6}$ $\text{bxc6}$ 8 e5 illustrate another well-known trap. Black must now move his knight, since 8...$\text{dxe5}^??$ ($8c$) 9 $\text{xf7}^+$! costs him a queen. Note that the trick doesn’t work if Black’s bishop is already on g7 as then the rook on h8 will defend the queen after ...$\text{xf7}$. The tricker should also make sure that he is not being tricked himself. I have seen examples where after $\text{wxd8}$ Black has calmly replied ...$\text{b4}^+$ or ...$\text{h6}^+$ followed by ...$\text{xd8}$, regaining the queen with an extra piece.
Idea 9 – Rook and Knight Tandem

One of the most intimidating sights for the black king is a knight on f6 working in tandem with a rook. For example, w\(\text{Q}f6, \text{g}5; b\text{Q}g7, \text{f}7,g6\). A white rook on the 8th rank threatens unstoppable mate (assuming no extraneous factors). Note also that if we moved the black king and the g-pawns to the e-file (w\(\text{Q}f6, \text{e}5; b\text{Q}e7, \text{e}6,f7\)) Black would still be unable to prevent mate. This knowledge can be of great practical use.

In diagram 9a, for example, White appears in trouble but Black has been careless. White plays 1\(\text{Q}f6+.\) After 1...\(\text{Q}g7 2 \text{Q}xb7! \text{Q}xb7 3 \text{Q}c8+d1+ 4 \text{Q}h2,\) mate is inevitable. 1...\(\text{Q}f8 2 \text{Q}xb7! \text{Q}xb7 3 \text{Q}c8+ \text{Q}e7 4 \text{Q}e8#\) doesn’t help. Note that if the pawn were removed from e5, the game would be drawn after 1 \(\text{Q}f6+ \text{Q}g7 (1...\text{Q}f8 2 \text{Q}xb7 \text{Q}xb7 3 \text{Q}c8+ \text{Q}e7 4 \text{Q}e8+ \text{Q}d6 5 \text{Q}d8+\) wins the queen) 2 \(\text{Q}xb7 \text{Q}xb7 3 \text{Q}c8 \text{Q}d1+\) and now 4 \(\text{Q}h2? \text{Q}b8! 5 \text{Q}xb8 \text{Q}d6+\) wins for Black, but after 4 \(\text{Q}g2\) Black has a perpetual but no more.

The other important mating net with rook and knight is: w\(\text{Q}f6, \text{Q}\) on 7th rank; b\(\text{Q}h8\). The king is powerless to prevent \(\text{Q}h7#\), as it would be to prevent \(\text{Q}g8#\) if the rook were on the g-file.

(9b) We see a typical mini-combination to force such a mate: 1 \(\text{Q}xg6+!\), removing h7’s defender, 2 \(\text{Q}f6+\) and 3 \(\text{Q}xh7#\).

Diagram 9c is a ridiculous position set up to demonstrate an important drawing theme. After 1 \text{Q}d7!, despite the fact that White is half a chess set down there is nothing Black can do to prevent Qh7+ and Qf6+ forever. This is a key idea in the endgame, where a well-timed counter-attack may save the day against dangerous passed pawns.
Idea 10 – \( \texttt{d}d5 \) can Embarrass a Queen on a5

The basic ingredients here are a white queen on d2 and a knight on c3 against an undefended black queen on a5. The trick works when after 1 \( \texttt{d}d5 \) \( \texttt{w}xd2 \) White has a powerful intermediate move before recapturing, such as \( \texttt{xe}7+ \) or \( \texttt{xf}6+ \). For example, diagram 10a is taken from a well-known line in the Sicilian Dragon where White has just played 11 \( \texttt{c}1-\texttt{b}1 \). The idea is to prevent the natural 11...\( \texttt{a}5 \), which is now met by 12 \( \texttt{d}d5 \) \( \texttt{w}xd2 \) 13 \( \texttt{xe}7+ \) \( \texttt{h}8 \) 14 \( \texttt{xd}2 \) with an extra pawn for White. In fact, Black is so desperate to put his queen on a5 in this line that he usually continues 11...\( \texttt{c}7 \) and after 12 g4 \( \texttt{fc}8 \) 13 h4 he plays 13...\( \texttt{a}5 \).

The trick doesn’t work when the black king has f8 available; 14 \( \texttt{d}d5 \) \( \texttt{w}xd2 \) 15 \( \texttt{xe}7+ ? \texttt{f}8 \) costs White a piece. The attempt to ruin Black’s pawn-structure with 14 \( \texttt{xf}6 \) \( \texttt{xf}6 \) 15 \( \texttt{d}d5 \) also fails after 15...\( \texttt{w}xd2 \) 16 \( \texttt{xf}6+ \) \( \texttt{g}7 ! \), and Black will recapture with the king on f6. If the g-pawn were still on g2, then White could try 17 \( \texttt{h}5+ \) but 17...gxh5 is usually OK as the doubled h-pawns are not easily exploited, while 17...\( \texttt{h}6 \) 18 \( \texttt{d}2 \) \( \texttt{xh}5 \), keeping his pawn-structure intact, is another possibility.

One of the most famous instances of the \( \texttt{d}d5 \) trick was Fischer-Spassky, Reykjavik Wch (8) 1972. In diagram 10b Black is the exchange for a pawn down but has a solid position. He now produced a real howler: 19...\( \texttt{d}7?? \) 20 \( \texttt{d}5! \) \( \texttt{w}xd2 \) 21 \( \texttt{xe}7+ \) \( \texttt{f}8 \) 22 \( \texttt{xd}2 \) and White soon won as, though the knight on e7 is en prise, so is Black’s bishop on c4.

(10c) Landenbergue-M.Röder, Bern 1993. Black now played the truly dreadful move 10...\( \texttt{d}8?? \) and resigned after 11 \( \texttt{d}5! \) in view of 11...\( \texttt{w}xd2 \) 12 \( \texttt{c}7#! \)
Idea 11 – The Fishbone Pawn

Black has castled kingside with full pawn-cover in front of his king. A perilous situation arises if White can advance a pawn to f6. Allowing the destructive fxg7 is normally only tolerable if a bishop can recapture on g7 or if Black can use the white pawn on g7 as a shield for his own king. This latter policy is fraught with danger but may buy Black a couple of tempi to develop his own counter-attack.

Usually Black meets f6 with ...g6. This is a positional concession and Black will now have to fret constantly about mate on g7 or on the back rank. Raymond Keene compares the pawn on f6 to a fishbone lodged in the opponent’s throat.

11a is an example of Lolli’s Mate. White wins by 1 \(\text{Wh}6 \text{Gg}8\) (1...\(\text{Qxf}6\) only delays) 2 \(\text{Whxh}7+! \text{Gxh}7\) 3 \(\text{Hh}4\). In similar situations 2 \(\text{Hh}4\) may be good enough though here Black can defend with 2...\(\text{Qf}8\). If it were still Black’s move after 1...\(\text{Gg}8\) he could defend with 2...g5 followed by ...\(\text{Gg}6\).

11b demonstrates another important tactical point. This time \(\text{Whxh}7+\) and \(\text{Hh}3\) is not possible (due to the bishop on e6) but White wins with 1 \(\text{Qd}8!\) followed by mate on g7.

Defensive resources in such positions include the aforementioned ...g5 and ...\(\text{Gg}6\), while a knight on e8, e6 or f5 will also defend against mate on g7. White can then seek to attack or deflect the knight, or switch his attack to h7. Black can also defend g7 from f8 with a bishop or queen; for example, I’ve seen ...\(\text{Wc}5+\) followed by ...\(\text{Wf}8\) embarrass a player who had invested heavily. Diagram 11c features another defensive option – targeting the f-pawn. Black plays 1...\(\text{Qd}7!\), preventing 2 \(\text{Wh}6\) on account of 2...\(\text{Qxf}6\) and after 2 \(\text{Qf}1 \text{Wh}8!\) White cannot increase the pressure.
Idea 12 – \( \text{hx}h6! \)

Playing ...h6 (or h3) is usually the least serious weakening of the castled position. Indeed, it is often played quite voluntarily. For example, one may wish to question the intentions of a bishop on g5, to prevent \( \text{g}g5 \) harassing a bishop on e6, or simply to reduce the risk of back-rank mate. The main drawbacks of advancing ...h6 are that, in certain circumstances, it may facilitate an opposing pawn-storm or allow a \( \text{hx}h6 \) sacrifice to open up the king position. Pawn-storms are dealt with elsewhere so here we shall examine the piece sacrifice.

\((12a)\) Gallagher-Huss, Bad Ragaz 1994.
Black should now play 16...\( \text{we}7 \), though White can still claim an endgame plus after 17 \( \text{g}g5 \) \( f6 \), 18 \( \text{x}xf6 \) \( \text{xf}6 \) 19 \( \text{xf}6 \) \( \text{gx}f6 \). Instead, with 16...\( \text{f}8 \), Huss dared me to sacrifice: 17 \( \text{hx}h6! \) \( \text{gx}h6 \) 18 \( \text{e}1! \) (an extremely important point – without the rook, White would have insufficient attacking forces) 18...\( \text{e}6 \) (on 18...\( \text{d}7 \) 19 \( \text{hx}h6 \) \( \text{d}6 \) 20 \( \text{g}g5+ \) \( \text{g}6 \) the simplest is 21 \( \text{h}4! \) – the h-pawn often provides that little extra in such positions) 19 \( \text{hx}h6 \) \( \text{e}7 \) (19...\( \text{d}8 \) is the best defensive try though I believe White still has a winning attack; I even think he should start with the paradoxical 20 \( \text{h}3! \) to rule out later back-rank threats) 20 \( \text{d}4! \) (20 \( \text{e}5 \) \( \text{d}8 \) 21 \( \text{g}5 \) \( f6! \) is less convincing as after 22 \( \text{h}7+ \) \( \text{h}7 \) 23 \( \text{hx}h7+ \) \( \text{f}8 \) Black has his own threats on the back rank) 20...\( \text{d}8 \) 21 \( \text{e}3 \) \( \text{h}4 \) \((12b)\) (21...\( \text{d}6 \) 22 \( \text{f}4! \)) 22 \( \text{xe}6! \) \( \text{fx}e6 \) 23 \( \text{f}3! \) \( \text{e}7 \) 24 \( \text{f}4! \) (I really enjoyed this little rook jig; 23...\( \text{e}7 \) was the only way to prevent the threatened \( \text{xf}8+ \) but now the bishop is out of squares) 24...\( \text{xf}2+ \) \((24...\( \text{g}5 \) 25 \( \text{g}4 \)) 25 \( \text{xf}2 \) \( \text{c}5+ \) 26 \( \text{f}1 \) \( \text{d}8 \) 27 \( \text{g}4+ \) \( \text{f}7 \) 28 \( \text{g}7+ \) \((12c)\) 1-0.
Idea 13 – More Mates on the Dark Squares

Once a fianchettoed bishop has been exchanged off, or the dark squares in front of a castled king weakened, tactical possibilities abound. If White also has a dark-squared bishop controlling the long diagonal, then Black may as well pack up and go home at once. Here are a few examples:

In diagram 13a White wins by 1 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Wh}x\text{h7+}$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dh}x\text{h7}$} 2 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Hh}3+$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Gg}8$} 3 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Hh}8#$.} Any strong player should be able to work out this combination as quickly as Deep Blue. The only thing to check for is that no black piece can interpose on the h-file, e.g. a queen on h5.

It is also essential knowledge that a knight on h6 supported by a bishop on the long diagonal mates a king on g8 with pawns on h7 and g6 and a rook or knight on f8. If we add a pawn to f7 then \textcolor{blue}{$\text{He7}$} is also mate. Many combinations are based on this theme. In diagram 13b White wins with 1 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Wh}x\text{g7+}$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dxg7}$} 2 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Hf}5++$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Gg}8$} 3 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Hh}6#$.} I’m sure you could set up many examples of your own.

The next position is more complex. Diagram 13c is taken from Gallagher-Bergez, Mitropa Cup (Baden) 1999. Black has just attacked the white queen with 12 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dh}f6-h5$} and after some thought I played the wet 13 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{He3}$} with approximately equal chances after 13...\textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dh}6$} 14 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Dxe}3$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Fc}8$.} My original intention had been to play 13 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Wh}4$} but I was scared off by the variation 13...\textcolor{blue}{$\text{Df}6$} 14 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Gg}5$} \textcolor{red}{$\text{Df}4$} 15 \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dxf}6$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dh}3+$}, when I thought 16 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Gxh}3$} \textcolor{red}{$\text{Df}3+$} was good for Black. I completely overlooked the fact that after 16 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Wh}x\text{h3!}$} \textcolor{blue}{$\text{Dxh}3$} 17 \textcolor{red}{$\text{Dd}5$} White wins back the queen, with an extra piece, in view of the threatened \textcolor{red}{$\text{Dxe}7#$.}
Idea 14 – The See-saw and Friends

Diagram 14a features an extreme example of the see-saw, one of the most delightful attacking ideas in chess. White, despite being a queen and three minor pieces down, reaches a winning ending by 1 $\text{hxg7+}$ $\text{h8}$ 2 $\text{hxg7+}$ (if the black pawn had been on h7 instead of h6, then simply $\text{hxg6}$ would be mate – an important point to remember) 2...$\text{g8}$ 3 $\text{g7+}$ $\text{h8}$ 4 $\text{xe7+}$ $\text{g8}$ 5 $\text{g7+}$ $\text{h8}$ 6 $\text{xd7+}$ $\text{g8}$ 7 $\text{g7+}$ $\text{h8}$ 8 $\text{xc7+}$ $\text{g8}$ 9 $\text{g7+}$ $\text{h8}$ 10 $\text{g5+}$! (10 $\text{xb7+??}$ $\text{g8}$ and the rook can’t return to g7 – when your time comes to indulge in a see-saw make sure you don’t take one piece too many) 10...$\text{h7}$ 11 $\text{xh5}$ $\text{g6}$ 12 $\text{f5}$ and White wins. Of course I made this example up and originally without the white pawn on e4, which meant that 11...$\text{g6}$ won a piece at the end. If that had been the situation, White would have had to content himself with a draw by repetition.

Diagram 14b is taken from the game Short-Kasparov, Novgorod 1997. White, who has sacrificed a piece, draws by 22 $\text{xf6}!!$ (this idea was made famous by the 1925 C.Torre-Em.Lasker game) 22...$\text{xh5}$ 23 $\text{xg7+}$ $\text{h8}$ 24 $\text{g6+}$ (or anywhere else on the g-file) 24...$\text{h7}$ 25 $\text{g7+}$, etc. If White goes for the black queen he will end up material down and though he can still draw with 24 $\text{xf7+}$ $\text{g8}$ 25 $\text{g7+}$ $\text{h8}$, he must now go back to f7 to prevent his bishop from being captured.

Diagram 14c is another important tactic. With his bishop under fire White is unable to indulge in the see-saw, but instead delivers mate by 1 $\text{g8++!}$ $\text{xg8}$ 2 $\text{g1#}$. Note that if the black h-pawn were on h6, or he had a piece that could interpose on g6, Black would be simply winning here.
Idea 15 – Point Your Bishops in the Right Direction

A pair of bishops pointing towards the enemy king, often on the a1-h8 and b1-h7 diagonals, can be a deadly attacking force.

In diagram 15a Black's careless play has left his king without any piece protection. White can now strip away his pawn-cover with a standard double bishop sacrifice: 1 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}h7+ \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}h7 \ 2 \text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}h5+ \text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}g8 \ 3 \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}g7! \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}g7 \) (it is unlikely that Black can get away with \( ...f6 \) or \( ...f5 \) in such positions but the details must be checked – after 3...\( f6 \), White wins by 4 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}6 \), and after something like 4...\( \text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}d7 \) then 5 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}d3 \) swings the white rook decisively into the attack) 4 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}g5+ \text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}h7 \). The success of the attack usually depends on whether White has a rook he can swing over to the kingside. Now 5 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}d3! \) forces mate but if the rook were still on a1 or there were a pawn on g3, White would have to be content with perpetual check.

Diagram 15b is an example of Blackburne's famous mate. This time the bishops don't lay down their lives but combine to weave the mating net. White wins by 1 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}4 \text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}5 \) (1...\( f6 \) is also met by 2 d5!) 2 d5! \( \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}d5 \) 3 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{w}}}xh5! \text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}xh5 \) (there is no escape) 4 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{h}}}7\# \).

Diagram 15c features a typical Sicilian position (it arises from diagram 46a after 13...dxe5 14 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}xe5 \text{\textit{\textbf{w}}}b6 \)). White wins by 15 \( \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}d7! \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}d7 \ 16 \text{\textit{\textbf{d}}}d3 \text{\textit{\textbf{g}}}6 \ 17 \text{\textit{\textbf{w}}}h6 \text{\textit{\textbf{f}}}6 \ 18 \text{\textit{\textbf{x}}}g6! \) and Black is soon mated. Note how dealing with the attack on one diagonal leads to serious trouble on the adjacent one. Here, 16...\( g6 \) exposed Black on the long diagonal, which he was then forced to block with 17...\( f6 \), but this left \( g6 \) without sufficient protection and allowed White a decisive sacrifice. This is an example of how every pawn advance creates weaknesses.
Idea 16 — $\text{f}7$!

There are quite a few variations in the Sicilian in which White manoeuvres his lightsquared bishop to b3 via c4. This is a very doubled-edged strategy since if Black has well-protected pawns on e6 and f7 then the bishop on b3 may end up biting on granite - in an endgame it can be a virtual spectator. White has two main strategies once he has parked his bishop on b3. The first is to soften up the black centre with his f-pawn by f4-f5. The second strategy is more spectacular – to sacrifice, either the bishop itself or another piece in order to bring the bishop back to life. These sacrifices usually take place on d5, e6 or f7. Here we concern ourselves with f7.

(16a) It has now been established that 12...$\text{dx}e5$ is best in this well-known position from the $\text{c}4$ Najdorf. The alternatives can be swiftly punished, e.g. 12...$\text{wc}7$ 13 $\text{xf}7$!! $\text{xf}7$ (13...$\text{xf}7$ 14 $\text{wh}5$+ wins easily) 14 $\text{xe}6$ (the bishop is well and truly alive) 14...$\text{we}5$ (14...$\text{wb}7$ (16b) loses to 15 $\text{d}8$! $\text{xd}8$ 16 e6!) 15 $\text{d}4$ $\text{f}5$ 16 $\text{xe}7$ $\text{f}4$ 17 $\text{e}2$! $\text{we}4$ 18 $\text{fl}$ $\text{f}6$ (18...$\text{f}6$ is a slight improvement though Black is still lost after 19 $\text{x}f6$ $\text{x}f6$ 20 $\text{h}5$) 19 $\text{f}5$! $\text{e}5$ 20 $\text{d}6$ 1-0 Rosenberger-Barta, corr 1983.

(16c) Gallagher-Čabrilo, Royan 1989. One would be forgiven for thinking that White was in serious trouble here but this was in fact the very position I had been aiming for. 22 $\text{xd}7$! $\text{xd}7$ 23 $\text{xf}7$! axb3? (this is based on a simple oversight; instead 23...$\text{xf}7$ 24 $\text{xe}6$ $\text{xe}6$ 25 $\text{xe}6$ favours White but Black can resist with 25...$\text{c}6$) 24 $\text{xd}7$ $\text{f}1$+ 25 $\text{d}1$ $\text{a}2$+ 26 $\text{xa}2$ 1-0. As 26...$\text{xa}2$ 27 $\text{a}4$ stops the pawn.

16a: after White’s 12th move

16b: after 14...$\text{wb}7$

16c: after Black’s 21st move
Idea 17 – Exploiting Pins

(17a) Botvinnik-Capablanca, AVRO 1938 is a legendary combination: 30 ♖a3!! (deflecting the queen) 30...♗xa3 31 ♖h5+! gxh5 32 ♕g5+ ♖f8 33 ♕xf6+ ♖g8 34 e7 ♖c1+ 35 ♕f2 ♖c2+ 36 ♖g3 ♖d3+ 37 ♖h4 ♖e4+ 38 ♕xh5 ♖e2+ 39 ♕h4 ♖e4+ 40 g4 ♖e1+ 41 ♕h5 and, with no more checks, Black can’t stop the white e-pawn from queening. I would like to draw your attention to a similar trick which is relatively common in practice. The basics are: ♖f5, ♖g3; ♖g7, ♖f6, ♖f7, g6, h7 and an undefended black queen on d8. White wins by 1 ♕h5+, exploiting two pins. Pirc or Modern players, in particular, should be careful to avoid this one.

Our next theme is the move ♖g6 (...♖g3) when the f7-pawn is pinned by the bishop on the a2-g8 diagonal. Diagram 17b features Tatai-Korchnoi, Beersheba 1978. The position is already quite good for Black, but after 12 ♕bd2? ♖g3! White is busted. If he escapes the pin with 13 ♕h1 then 13...♖xf2 is a pawn for nothing, while there is no time for moves like 13 ♕b3 as 13...♖xh3 is a major threat. Tatai tried 13 ♖f5 ♖e2 14 ♖d4, hoping to create confusion by blocking the a7-g1 diagonal (this is the main defensive resource against ♖g6 and ...♖g3 attacks) but after 14...♖xd4 he resigned as 15 cxd4 (15 fxg3 ♖xc2+) 15...♖xd4 16 ♖xc8 ♖xf2+ leads to a quick mate. Returning to the position after 12 ♕bd2, it is worth noting that 12...♖xh3, with the point that 13 gxh3 ♖g3+ is check, is less effective, as White can play 13 ♖g5 with a worse, but playable game. Nevertheless, this remains an important tactic.

The solution to 17c may look very obvious (1 ♕xf7+ ♖xf7 2 ♖e8#) but this is an important tactic to have in your armoury.
Idea 18 – Legall and Friends

A pin can be a lethal weapon but it is important to remember that the only real pin is against the king. Here are some examples where the supposedly pinned piece broke free of its shackles.

One of the first officially known combinations I came across was Legall’s Mate and for many years I dreamt, in vain, of winning a game in this fashion. Diagram 18a is reached after 1 e4 e5 2 f3 d6 3 c4 g4 4 c3 h6?. White wins by 5 xe5! xd1? 6 xf7+ e7 7 d5#. Of course Black could have cut his losses to a pawn with 5...dxe5 but the main problem is his dreadful 4th move (the 3rd is not great either). After 4...f6, defending the bishop, or 4...c6, to meet 5 xe5?? by 5...xe5, the game would continue normally. There are more elaborate versions of Legall’s Mate so the idea should be in your tactical armoury.

The Nimzowitsch is a pet variation of Britain’s first over-the-board GM, Tony Miles, and here there are a couple of variations involving a surprising xe5 – one is OK for Black and one isn’t. Firstly the respectable one. 1 e4 c6 2 f3 d6 3 d4 f6 4 c3 g4 5 d5 (5 e3 is a better try for the advantage) 5 xe5 6 xe5 xd1 7 b5+ c6 8 dxc6 dx5! 9 c7+ d7 10 xd7+ xd7 11 xd1 e6 12 f3 xc7 (18b) with just a tiny advantage for White, Renet-Miles, Linares 1995.

And now the bad one: 1 e4 c6 2 f3 d6 3 d4 g4 4 d5 xe5? (4...b8) 5 xe5! xd1 6 b5+ c6 7 dxc6 wa5+ (this time 7...dx5 loses to 8 cxb7+ as there is no ...d7 defence) 8 c3 0-0-0 9 c4! wb4 (9...c7 10 d5!) 10 a3 wc5 11 e3 wh5 12 xd1 (18c). I had this position with White a couple of times in my youth. Believe me, it’s no fun for Black.
Idea 19 – h7 (h2) Still Under Fire

One of the most common attacking manoeuvres is to play \( \text{d3} \), drop the bishop back to b1 or c2, and then play \( \text{d3} \) to target h7, which is often the most sensitive square after Black has castled kingside. Very often Black is then forced to play something like \( ...\text{g6} \), when White can switch his attack to the weakened dark squares – we’ve already seen how dangerous this can be. Even when Black has a knight on f6 defending h7 he has to be extremely careful. Here are some examples where he wasn’t.

Diagram 19a is a Sicilian position where White is trying to play e5. Black should now play 1 ... \( \text{g4!} \) to prevent this as 2 h3?? (White must play the unpalatable 2 g3) can be met by 2 ... \( \text{d4!} \). This deflection of the defending knight is an extremely common idea which must be included in your arsenal.

Diagram 19b is a fairly standard IQP position in which Black should play 13 ... \( \text{g6} \) with a reasonable game. Instead a number of unsuspecting players have chosen 13 ... \( \text{e8?} \) (13 ... \( \text{e8?} \) meets with the same combination) only to be answered by 14 d5! \( \text{exd5} \) 15 \( \text{g5!} \), when 15 ... \( \text{g6?} \) loses to 16 \( \text{xe7!} \) \( \text{xe7} \) 17 \( \text{dxe5} \). The only move is 15 ... \( \text{e4} \), but after 16 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{dxe4} \) 17 \( \text{xe4} \) \( \text{g6} \) 18 \( \text{h4} \) White has an excellent attacking position. Dizdar-Dizdarević, Sarajevo 1988 concluded rapidly: 18 ... \( \text{c7} \) 19 \( \text{b3} \) \( \text{d6} \) 20 \( \text{f6} \) h5 21 \( \text{g5} \) \( \text{h7} \) 22 \( \text{c2} \) 1-0.

Diagram 19c demonstrates another standard mate in its simplest form. White mates in two moves by 1 \( \text{wh7+} \) \( \text{h7} \) 2 \( \text{h3#} \).
Idea 20 – f5: A Dangerous Square

A knight on f5 can be an awesome attacking force, especially if it has a little back-up. It attacks three important squares in the vicinity of the black king on g8: e7 (remember Anastasia), h6 and, most importantly, g7.

Diagram 20a features one of the oldest tricks in the book – Black has to deal with the mate threat to g7, which means he can’t prevent ♕h6+ winning the queen. If we alter diagram 20a slightly, e.g. w♕f3,♕d1; b♕c7, then with this knowledge we should not take long to find the winning move 1 ♕d7!.

One can find many examples of Black being destroyed by a ♕xg7 sacrifice. Diagram 20b features a key idea. White wins by 1 ♕xg7! ♕xg7 2 ♗g4+! ♗h8 3 ♗g5. Here the king couldn’t advance to h6 because of ♗g5# but even in positions where he can advance, the sacrifice may still be playable.

It is not uncommon for the move ♕f5 to be played as a sacrifice itself in order to open up the black king position. One basic idea is represented by the shell position: w♕d2,♕g3; b♕g7,♕f6,♕f7,g6,h7. White plays 1 ♕f5+! ♗xf5 2 ♗g5+ ♗h8 3 ♗xf6+. It may be possible for Black to meet 1 ♕f5+ with 1...♕h8 but this is assuming that the f5-knight has not forked anything and that 2 ♗h6 doesn’t hurt.

(20c) Svidler-Ivanchuk, Dortmund 1998 is a more complex example: 30 ♕hf5! ♗xf5 31 ♕xf5 ♕xe4 32 ♗h6+ ♗g8 33 ♗xc4! 1-0. Again I express my wish that players should be forced to play on until the end of the combination. In this case: 33...♕xc4 34 ♗xd5!! ♗xd5 (34...♖c1+ 35 ♗h2) 35 ♕xe7+ ♕xe7 36 ♗g4+ and Black is mated.
**Idea 21 – Standard Rook Sacrifices**

There are some very common rook deflection sacrifices which belong in your tactical armoury:

*(21a)* Bronstein-Ratner, Moscow 1945. 24 \(\text{Q}xe6!\). Now after 24...fxe6 25 \(\text{Q}xd7\) \(\text{Q}xd7\) 26 \(\text{W}xe6+\) \(\text{W}f7\) (or 26...\(\text{Q}g7\) 27 \(\text{W}xd7+\) \(\text{W}f7\) 28 \(\text{Q}h7+)\) 27 \(\text{Q}h8+\) White wins the queen, even in the case of 27...\(\text{Q}g7\) 28 \(\text{Q}h7+\). Note that if Black had tried to restrict his losses to a pawn with 24...\(\text{W}e7\) he would have been dispatched by another rook sacrifice: 25 \(\text{Q}h8+!\) \(\text{Q}xh8\) 26 \(\text{W}h6+\) \(\text{Q}g8\) 27 \(\text{W}g7#\). In the game Ratner chose 24...\(\text{Q}xd1\) but he was hopelessly lost after 25 \(\text{Q}xf8\) \(\text{Q}xh1\) 26 \(\text{Q}xh1\) \(\text{Q}xf8\) 27 \(\text{W}e7\).

*(21b)* Gelfand-Speelman, Las Vegas FIDE KO Wch 1999. Jon Speelman chose the recent FIDE World Championship to make one of the biggest howlers of his career. In the diagram position he played 18...\(\text{W}e5??\), taking advantage of a pin to create kingside threats. Unfortunately after 19 \(\text{Q}d8+!\) \(\text{Q}xd8\) the pin was no longer there and White simply removed the queen. After 20 \(\text{Q}xe5\) \(\text{Q}xe5\) 21 \(\text{W}xe4\) Jon might have resigned in a less important tournament.

Rook sacrifices are also an important tool in drawing the king out of his shelter:

*(21c)* Ivanchuk-Anand, Linares 1998. 22...\(\text{Q}xc2!!\). Perhaps you don’t think such a move is standard but Anand certainly does. In his notes in *New in Chess* he simply passes over this move without comment. 23 \(\text{Q}xc2\) (23 \(\text{W}xc2\) \(\text{W}xe1+\)) 23...\(\text{W}xa2\) (the presence of opposite-coloured bishops greatly helps the attack) 24f4 \(\text{Q}e8+\) 25 \(\text{Q}d2\) \(\text{Q}xf4+\) 26 \(\text{Q}e2\) \(\text{W}xb2+\) 27 \(\text{Q}f3\) \(\text{Q}c1\) 0-1.
Idea 22 – Inviting Everyone to the Party

The title is Yasser Seirawan’s way of expressing an important attacking principle: an attack has more chances of success if all your pieces are participating, or at least more are attacking than your opponent has defending. Normally this means swinging or manoeuvring relatively idle queenside pieces into the battle area. There are many examples throughout the book but this is the most striking:

(22a) Oll-Hodgson, Groningen PCA Qualifier 1993. 34...\(\text{h7}!!\) 35 \(\text{wc5}\) (the move of an unsuspecting man, but after 35 \(\text{wc2}\), 35...\(\text{wc2}\) 36 \(\text{xc2}\) \(\text{f6}\) is unpleasant for White due to his weak back rank; 35...\(\text{b4}!\) is another idea, one nice line being 36 \(\text{c7}\) \(\text{c7}\) loses to 36...\(\text{xc2}\) 36...\(\text{d7}\) 37 \(\text{xd7}\)?? \(\text{c2+}\) and White has the choice of exiting via Idea 1 or 2) 35...\(\text{g6}!!\)

What’s this – surely the king is not coming to the party? Well, not all the way. To understand Black’s last two moves take a look again at diagram 22a. Black has a positional advantage in the form of the superior minor piece but while his knight and queen are both active, the rook is passive and Black needs its active participation to increase the pressure. Even armed with this knowledge it’s still a giant step to finding the extraordinary ...\(\text{g8-h7-g6}\) just so that the rook can take the h-file to the party.

36 h4 \(\text{h8}\) 37 a3 \(\text{h5}\) 38 \(\text{g1}\) \(\text{h7}\) 39 \(\text{d1}\) \(\text{b3}\) 40 \(\text{d2}\) \(\text{f5}!!\) (22b). Made it! The white bishop now looks offside on \(d6\) and with numerical superiority Black’s attack is odds-on to succeed. 41 g4 \(\text{f4}\) 42 \(\text{bl+}\) \(\text{g8}\) 43 g5 \(\text{b4}\) 44 \(\text{d3}\) \(\text{c3}!\) 45 \(\text{xb4}\). Now 45...\(\text{xb4}??\) 46 \(\text{d8}\#\) is less accurate than...

45...\(\text{a2}!!\) (22c) 0-1. What a way to finish – 46 \(\text{xa2}\) \(\text{f1+}\) mates.
Idea 23 – The King’s Gambit

The King’s Gambit (KG) is my favourite opening. Before the database age I wouldn’t dream of playing anything else against 1...e5. Nowadays I use it more sparingly to avoid being a sitting target for the opponent’s preparation. It is an opening overflowing with attacking ideas and I would like to present a whistle-stop tour of some of the major variations through the medium of two exciting games.

Gallagher-Balashov, Lenk 1991
1 e4 e5 2 f4 (23a) 2...exf4. Or:

1) 2...d5 3 exd5 c6 (3...e4, the Falkbeer, is a tricky but inferior variation best met by 4 d3!) 4 c3 exf4 (4...exd5 5 fxe5 d4 6 e4 promises White an edge, while McDonald’s 6 d5+!? may be even stronger) 5 d6 6 d4 e7 6...f6 is best met by 7 e2+ e7 8 xe7+ xe7 9 e5 with a small plus for White – in the modern version of the KG White is not averse to a warranted queen exchange) 7 c4 cxd5 (7...0-0 8 dxc6 bxc6 is perhaps a slight improvement for Black) 8 cxd5 0-0 9 0-0 c6 10 b3 g4 11 c4 c7 12 c3 (23b) and though the position is very sharp, White’s superior pawn-structure is often the decisive factor in practice.

2) 2...c5 3 f3 d6 4 c3 (4 c3 f6 5 c4 c6 6 d3 is also a good line; then 6...g4 and 6...a6 can be met by 7 a4 and 7 f5 respectively) and now (23c):

2a) 4...f5 5 fxe5 dxe5 6 d4 exd4 7 c4 fxe4 is very messy. I prefer the untested 8 xd4! to the c5-f7-h8 rook grab.

2b) 4...f6 5 d4 exd4 6 cxd4 b6 (the alternative 6...b4+ is popular in practice but White is slightly better after 7 d2 xd2+ 8 bxd2) 7 c3 0-0 8 e5 dxe5 9 fxe5 d5 10 g5 xc3 11 bxc3 is good for White. Black’s best is 11...e8 12 d3.
f6 (23d) loses to 13 0-0!, e.g. 13...fxg5 14 \( \text{Q}xg5 \text{Q}e6 15 \text{Q}xh7+ \text{Q}h8 16 \text{Q}h5!!.

2c) The prophylactic 4...\text{b}b6! may be best as 5 d4 exd4 6 exd4 \text{Q}g4 is too loose for White; he should prefer 5 \text{Q}a3 (intending \text{Q}c4) 5...\text{f}6 6 d3, though 6...\text{Q}g4 7 d4 f5 is rather unclear.

3 \text{f}3 \text{d}5 (see the next Idea for the alternatives) 4 exd5 \text{Q}f6 5 \text{c}4 (5 \text{b}5+ is the main alternative) 5...\text{Q}xd5 (on 5...\text{d}6 I like 6 \text{Q}e2+) 6 0-0 (6 \text{Q}xd5!? Fedorov-Yusupov, Batumi Echt 1999) 6...\text{e}7 (6...\text{e}6 should be met by 7 \text{b}3, intending c4 and d4) 7 d4 (the immediate 7 \text{Q}xd5 \text{Q}xd5 8 d4 is a serious alternative though White will have to take 8...g5 into account) 7...0-0?! (inaccurate - after 7...\text{e}6 8 \text{Q}e2 0-0 9 \text{c}3 \text{c}6 10 \text{Q}xd5 \text{Q}xd5 11 \text{Q}xd5 \text{Q}xd5 12 \text{Q}f4 \text{d}6 the game is level) 8 \text{Q}xd5 \text{Q}xd5 9 \text{Q}xd4 \text{c}5? (9...c6 and 9...\text{Q}d8 are better but in both cases White has a healthy initiative - the text is a logical try to open the position for the bishop-pair but it fails tactically) 10 \text{c}3 \text{c}4 11 \text{Q}e1! \text{f}6 12 \text{d}6 \text{Q}xd4+ 13 \text{h}1 \text{d}8 14 \text{e}4! f5? (Black must play 14...\text{c}6 though 15 c3 is good for White, even after 15...\text{f}5, which can be met by 16 \text{Q}fg5!) 15 \text{Q}h4! \text{c}6 (23e) 16 \text{e}5!! (a beautiful deflection combination which remarkably I got to play twice against grandmasters) 16...\text{xe}5 (16...\text{Q}e6 17 \text{Q}xc6 \text{Q}xd6 18 \text{Q}e7+ \text{h}8 19 \text{Q}g5 is the end, while 16...\text{Q}xf1+ 17 \text{xf}1 \text{fxe}4 18 \text{Q}xd8+ is mate next move) 17 \text{f}6+! \text{xf}6 18 \text{xc}4+ \text{h}8 19 \text{xc}5 \text{e}5 20 \text{Q}e2 (the game is essentially over but the finish was also pretty) 20...b6 21 \text{e}7 \text{c}7 22 \text{Q}xe5 \text{f}6 23 \text{c}7 \text{g}6 24 \text{h}ae1 \text{c}7 25 \text{Q}xf5 \text{x}b2 26 \text{h}3 \text{Q}dc8 27 \text{Q}e7 \text{c}4 28 \text{h}4! \text{d}4 (the f6-square is mined - 28...\text{f}6 29 \text{Q}xf6!) 29 \text{Q}e4 a5 30 \text{Q}d2 \text{b}2 31 \text{Q}h5 (threatening \text{Q}xh6+) 31...\text{c}6 (23f) 32 \text{Qxc}4! \text{xc}4 33 \text{Q}xh6+! gxh6 34 \text{Q}xh6+ \text{g}8 35 \text{Q}e6+ 1-0.

\text{23d: after 12...f6}

\text{23e: after 15...c6}

\text{23f: after 31...c6}
Idea 24 – The King’s Gambit (2)

Short-Piket, Madrid 1997

1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 d3 f6

Cunningham’s Defence. Two of the sternest tests of the KG’s soundness are 3...d6, Fischer’s ‘high-class waiting move’, and the principled 3...g5. All I can offer here is a little advice as they are such vast topics:

1) 3...d6 4 d4 g5 5 h4 g4 6 f1 (24a) with plenty of options for Black: 6...f3 is best met by 7 g5!; 6...f6 7 xf4!? xe4 8 d3 gives White decent compensation for the pawn; 6...w6 7 c3 c7 8 ge2 h6 9 d2 c6 10 b5! d8 is a fascinating line when it’s unclear if White should play 11 e5 or 11 d5 – both lead to great complications; 6...h6 7 c3 c6 8 ge2 w6 9 g3 (breaking Black’s kingside grip) 9...fxg3 (after 9...f3 10 f4 White’s control of the centre outweights Black’s passed pawn) 10 xg3 xcl 11 xc1 w4 12 c2 w3, when 13 d2 will give White pressure in a typical KG ending, while 13 c4, intending c3, is sharper; 6...f5 has been all the rage recently – the critical line is 7 c3 f6 8 xf4 exe4 9 d5! (24b) but practice is still very limited.

2) After 3...g5 we have:

2a) 4 c4!?, an important move with a large following, but as I’ve never played it I shall remain mute on the subject.

2b) 4 d4 g4 5 xf4 gxf3 6 wxf3 recently claimed the prized scalp of Michael Adams, but I’m not going to vouch for the soundness of the Rosentreter Gambit.

2c) 4 h4 g4 5 e5 is the famous Kieseritzky Gambit. Black’s most reliable counter is 5...f6 (24c) (with 5...d6 6 xg4 f6 a close second) where the two main battlegrounds are 6 c4 d5 7 exd5 d6 8 d4 and 6 d4 d6 7 c3 e4 8 xf4 w7 9 e2!.

These lines are major causes of stress for
King’s Gambiteers but happily most black players are scared of them as well.

4  \( \square c3! ? \)

Many players prefer the more prudent 4  \( \square c4 \) in order to meet 4...  \( \triangle h4+ \) with 5  \( \triangle f1 \). Black usually prefers 4...  \( \triangle f6 \), when 5  \( e5 \)  \( \triangle g4 \) 6  \( d4 \) (6 0-0 and 6  \( \triangle c3 \) are the alternatives) 6...  \( h4+ \) 7  \( f1 \)  \( f2 \) 8  \( e1 \) is good for White) 7  \( b3!? \) (after 7  \( x d6 \), 7...  \( x d6 \) 8  \( e2+ \) is better for White, but 7...  \( x d6 ! \) is unclear) 7...  \( e3!? \) (I’m not sure about this) 8  \( x e3 \)  \( fxe3 \) 9 0-0  \( e6 \) 10  \( d3 \) c6 11  \( fxe3 \) gave White good play in a recent Fedorov game.

4...  \( h4+ \) (few players can resist the check when the king is forced to e2) 5  \( e2 \)  \( d5 \) (5...c6 is less ambitious – I once had a game which went 6  \( d4 \)  \( d5 \) 7  \( d2+!? \)  \( x e4 \) 8  \( x f6 \) 9  \( x f4 \)  \( e6 \) 10  \( c3 \) 0-0-0? (the critical line is 10...g5, when Gallagher-Klovans, Oberwart 1993 continued 11  \( d1 \) 0-0-0 12  \( c2 \)  \( e8+! \) 13  \( d3! \) {13  \( x h4 \)  \( x e4! \}) 13...  \( x f3 \) 14  \( gxf3 \)  \( x d4+!? \) 15  \( cxd4 \)  \( x d4 \) and now McDonald’s 16  \( a4! \), meeting 16...  \( x e8 \) with 17  \( a3 \), looks good) 11  \( x f4 \)  \( e6 \) 12  \( e3! \) (24e) (unpinning the knight on f3 is the key to the position) 12...g5 13  \( x g5 \)  \( x g5 \) 14  \( x g5 \) f5 15  \( h3! \)  \( x d4 \) (Piket sees no future in 15...  \( x e4+ \) 16  \( f2 \) 16  \( cxd4 \)  \( x d4 \) 17  \( x g4! \)  \( x e4+ \) 18  \( f2 \)  \( x g4 \) 19  \( h6 \)  \( f8+ \) (24f) 20  \( g1?? \) (20  \( g3! \) would have won easily) 20...  \( x f1+! \) 21  \( x f1 \)  \( e1+ \) 22  \( f2 \)  \( e2+ \) (after 22...  \( e2 \) 23  \( g3 \)  \( x g2+ \) 24  \( x g2 \)  \( e2+ \) Black has perpetual check) 23  \( g3 \)  \( d3+ \) 24  \( x g4 \) 1-0. The checks soon run out. If a player of Short’s class can risk the KG in top tournaments, then there are no excuses for the rest of us.
Idea 25 – Typical Exchange Sacrifices

One of the most common reasons for sacrificing the exchange is to gain control over a particular colour complex. In the King’s Indian Defence, for example, a dark-squared bishop is very often worth a rook.

(25a) Karpov-Kasparov, New York/Lyons Wch (11) 1990. 13...\textit{\texttt{x}e}3! (this stunned everyone at the time) 14 \textit{\texttt{w}e}3 \textit{\texttt{w}f}8 (by threatening 15...\textit{\texttt{d}g}4, which was impossible last move on account of \textit{\texttt{d}xc}6, Black hopes to persuade White to give up his blockade on d4) 15 \textit{\texttt{d}xc}6 (subsequent games revolved around 15 \textit{\texttt{b}b}5 but Black also survived this test) 15...\textit{\texttt{b}xc}6 (Black controls the centre and the dark squares in return for his exchange) 16 \textit{\texttt{h}h}1 \textit{\texttt{b}b}8 17 \textit{\texttt{a}a}4 \textit{\texttt{b}b}4 18 \textit{\texttt{b}b}3 \textit{\texttt{e}e}6 19 \textit{\texttt{b}b}2 \textit{\texttt{h}h}5 20 \textit{\texttt{d}d}3 \textit{\texttt{h}h}4 (a swinging rook – see Idea 72) 21 \textit{\texttt{f}f}2 \textit{\texttt{w}e}7 (25b) 22 \textit{\texttt{g}g}4! (Kasparov complimented Karpov on his defence in this game) 22...\textit{\texttt{d}d}4! 23 \textit{\texttt{x}d}4 \textit{\texttt{x}h}2+ 24 \textit{\texttt{x}h}2 \textit{\texttt{h}h}4+ 1/2-1/2.

In blocked positions with good outposts, knights may become more valuable than rooks, e.g.:

(25c) Illescas-Candela, Spanish Ch (Linares) 1998. 28 \textit{\texttt{e}e}5! \textit{\texttt{c}c}5 (now White obtains a wonderful outpost on d4 for his knight; it was also possible to wait with 28...\textit{\texttt{e}e}7 though White has an edge after 29 \textit{\texttt{a}a}5) 29 \textit{\texttt{d}d}5 \textit{\texttt{b}b}6 30 \textit{\texttt{e}e}2 \textit{\texttt{g}g}8 31 \textit{\texttt{d}d}4+ \textit{\texttt{d}d}7 32 \textit{\texttt{c}c}3 (the king’s task is to defend the weak pawn on e3) 32...\textit{\texttt{a}a}8 33 \textit{\texttt{d}d}3 \textit{\texttt{h}h}5 (Black should sit tight and let White do the work) 34 \textit{\texttt{h}h}5 \textit{\texttt{g}g}3 35 \textit{\texttt{d}d}6 \textit{\texttt{b}b}6 36 \textit{\texttt{a}a}5 \textit{\texttt{b}b}a5 (36...\textit{\texttt{a}a}6 is best met by 37 \textit{\texttt{b}b}1!!) 37 \textit{\texttt{b}b}a5 \textit{\texttt{a}a}6 38 \textit{\texttt{b}b}1 \textit{\texttt{a}a}7 39 \textit{\texttt{b}b}6 \textit{\texttt{c}c}7 40 \textit{\texttt{f}f}5 and White’s dominant knights give him a clear advantage (1-0, 60).
Idea 26 – Attack at the Weakest Point

(26a) Ponomariov-Babula, Elista OL 1998. Many a player would take one look at the diagram position and think ‘Great, his king is stuck in the middle – let’s mate him’. This would be completely the wrong approach. The black king is surrounded by his own pieces and any direct assault would be unlikely to succeed. The white knight, in particular, would struggle to play a role in any kingside assault. No, the correct plan here is to attack on the queenside, where Black has a weakened pawn-structure, whilst at the same time attempting to slow down Black’s unravelling on the kingside. The king is misplaced, precisely because it hinders the development of his own forces, in particular the rook on h8. Here, the world’s youngest GM carried out this plan to perfection.

15 \( \text{Ke1} \) \( \text{Ke6} \) 16 \( \text{Kd2} \) \( \text{Kd8} \) 17 \( \text{Kc1} \) \( \text{Ke7} \) 18 \( \text{Kxa4} \) \( \text{Kb8} \) 19 a3 h5 20 \( \text{Kf3!} \) (26b)

Until now White has been slowly building up on the queenside but this is a key move, preventing Black from freeing himself with \( \ldots \text{g6} \) and \( \ldots \text{g7} \) – note that this was not a concern until Black played \( \ldots \text{h5} \) as previously White could have met this with \( \text{Kxh6+} \).

20...h4 21 \( \text{Kc5!} \) (controlling the position through little tactics as 21...\( \text{Kxb2?} \) now fails to 22 \( \text{Kc3!} \) \( \text{Kxc3} \) 23 \( \text{Ke6+} \) – you may ask why White didn’t just play b4 at once but he wants to keep open the possibility of \( \text{Kb4} \), especially while the black king is on f8) 21...\( \text{Kg8} \) 22 b4 \( \text{Kc8} \) 23 \( \text{Kc2!} \) \( \text{Kg6} \) 24 \( \text{Kd3!} \) \( \text{Kd7} \) 25 \( \text{Ke1} \) \( \text{Kh7} \) 26 b5 \( \text{Ke7} \) (26c) 27 \( \text{Kh5+!} \) (ensuring that the c6-pawn will be pinned after the queen exchange) 27...\( \text{Kg8} \) 28 \( \text{Kg4!} \) \( \text{Kxg4} \) 29 hxg4

White wins the pawn on c6 and takes a clear plus into the endgame.
Idea 27 - Rooks’ Pawns can also be Used in a Positional Manner

The rook’s pawn is an important tool in modern chess. We’re not just talking about the basic h4-h5xg6 and mate on the h-file (although this can also be a powerful weapon in the right circumstances), but its more subtle usage in creating weaknesses in the enemy camp. In my opinion grandmasters are becoming increasingly keen on moving their rooks’ pawns. For example in diagram 27a, a very well known position in the French Winawer, White usually chose between 7 ♖g4 and 7 ♖f3, but in recent times 7 h4!? has become quite popular. Another example is diagram 27b, reached after the moves 1 d4 ♖f6 2 ♖f3 g6 3 g3 ♖g7 4 ♖g2 0-0 5 0-0 d6, where quite a few players have begun to play 6 a4.

What does White hope to gain with these advances? Firstly in diagram 27a it is out of the question for Black to blockade with 7...h5 as this will lead to a disastrously weak dark-square complex if he has to defend his h-pawn with ...g6, e.g. 8 ♖e2 g6 (27c). Therefore the white pawn will make it to h5 (after, say, 7...♖bc6), when Black has an important decision to make - whether he should let the pawn continue or block it with ...h6. If he chooses the latter, then he will have a weak point on g7 and White will have gained space on the kingside, while if he lets the white pawn advance to h6 he is again going to suffer on the dark squares, whether he removes it or chops it off. White’s advance of the h-pawn can also be considered as a prophylactic measure against Black’s traditional break with ...f6. It all sounds too good to be true, and in a way it is. While White is pushing his h-pawn Black is developing his...
pieces and will inevitably gain counterplay for the positional advantages White is likely to gain on the kingside. The jury is still out on 7 \textit{h4}.

Turning to diagram 27b, here blockading with \textit{6...a5} is an important option, though in my opinion it is a slight concession to White. In these Pirc-type set-ups (White will now be aiming for \textit{e4}, and not \textit{c4}, which would create a hole on \textit{b4}) there is less dynamism in the black game if he is unable to play \textit{...b5}. I believe that in this particular case, Black should just develop, for example after \textit{6...\textit{b}d7 7 a5 c6 8 \textit{\textit{c}c3} (8 \textit{\textit{b}d2} e5 9 e4 exd4 10 \textit{\textit{x}d4} \textit{\textit{c}c5} is another possibility) 8...\textit{\textit{w}c7} 9 e4 e5 10 \textit{h3} (27d) a good plan for Black is to play \textit{...b8} followed by \textit{...b5} relieving the pressure created by White's \textit{a5}-pawn.

Diagram 27e shows another important concept. Black's last two moves in this Sämisch King's Indian have been \textit{...c6} and \textit{...a6} and he is now ready to attack on the queenside with \textit{...b5}. White can prevent this with \textit{8 a4} but then Black replies \textit{8...a5!} (27f) (yes, 7...\textit{a6} and 8...\textit{a5}), making some important positional gains at the cost of a tempo. The b4-square has now fallen into his hands while after the usual \textit{...e5} he will eventually gain control over \textit{c5}. This is a standard positional trick known in many positions, though on occasion the tempo lost in carrying out the manoeuvre can be more important than the positional gains. A typical continuation is 9 \textit{\textit{w}d2} e5 10 \textit{\textit{g}e2} \textit{\textit{a}a6} 11 \textit{\textit{d}d1} \textit{\textit{d}d7} 12 0-0 exd4 13 \textit{\textit{x}d4} \textit{\textit{d}dc5} 14 \textit{\textit{b}b1} \textit{\textit{w}b6}, Razuvaev-Izkuznykh, Russian Ch (Elista) 1995. Black has good control of the queenside, but after 15 \textit{f4}! White obtained attacking chances on the kingside.
Idea 28 – More About a4

There are many reasons for White to play a4:

a) As a prophylactic measure against Black expanding with ...b5 or to prevent Black’s a-pawn advancing any further.
b) As part of an attack on a black king which has settled on the queenside.
c) To open the a-file or to undermine Black’s queenside structure when he has advanced his b-pawn (with the help of a5 when Black has only advanced to b6).

I would like to discuss a4 a little more in the context of the Sicilian. Firstly, the advance ...b5 is an integral part of Black’s strategy in most variations. If White has castled queenside then it is unusual to meet ...b5 with a4 as this just speeds up the black attack. If White has castled kingside (or is intending to) then a4 is an important option, either to prevent ...b5 or to undermine Black’s queenside once it has been played.

After a4, it is unusual for Black to permit axb5 as this may simply cost him a pawn, the main exception being when he has counterplay against the e-pawn (28a). In general Black also prefers to avoid ...bxa4 as this can leave serious, and accessible, weaknesses in its wake. In diagram 28b White has even prefaced a4 with b4 in order to force Black to capture on a4. Black’s favoured response to a4 is to play ...b4 so White must make plans for his c3-knight before playing a4 (it can be risky for Black to play ...b5 when there is no knight on c3 as ...b4 doesn’t win a tempo). Diagram 28c shows one way to gain the initiative, while very often White might preface c3d5 with the sequence a4 b4 in order to loosen Black’s queenside. If White feels his knight belongs on c3 then he shouldn’t be shy about stabilizing its position with a3.
Idea 29 – Preventive Sacrifices

It is not unusual for one side to invest material to keep the opposing king in the centre or to keep it from castling on a particular wing. These sacrifices are known as preventive sacrifices. There are many examples throughout the book, e.g. Idea 26 saw a preventive sacrifice followed by a queenside attack; Idea 47 features a thematic $\text{Qd5}$ sacrifice in the Sicilian to keep the black king in the centre, while Idea 61 is a wonderful game from Ivanchuk. Another common idea is to park a bishop on the $a3-f8$ diagonal to prevent ...0-0. For example, $1 \text{e4 e5 2 } \text{Qf3 Qc6 3 Qc4 Qc5 4 c3 Qf6 5 d4 exd4 6 cxd4 Qb4+ 7 Qc3 Qxe4 8 0-0}$ is an old line of the Giuoco Piano where Black is ill-advised to risk $8...Qxc3?! 9 bxc3 Qxc3?!$ on account of $10 \text{Qa3}(29a)$ with a powerful attack. If the fatal diagonal is blocked with $10...d6$ then $11 \text{Rc1 Qa5 12 Wa4!}$ is good for White. Nor is $10...d5 11 Qb5 Qxa1 12 Qe1+ Qe6 13 Wa4!$ an improvement.

(29b) Marshall-Ed.Lasker, USA Ch (New York) (4) 1923. Frank Marshall loved to attack, and frustration over the fact that Black’s king was about to disappear into safety must have helped him find the following combination: $16 \text{e4! dxe3? (16...Qg6 was a better chance) 17 Qxc6! (on the immediate 17 Qd6, Black defends with 17...Qe7) 17...bxc6 18 Qd6!}$ (suddenly the black king is stuck in the middle, and the decisive threat of $Qxc6+$ must be dealt with) $18...Qd7 19 Qe5+ Qf8 20 fxe3!$ (White’s 16th move was a real gem) $20...f6 21 Qxf6+! gxf6 22 Qxf6+ Qe8 23 Qxh8+ Qe7 24 Qe5+ Qd8 25 h4!? Qc8 26 Qf7 a5 27 Qd6+ Qb8 (29c) and now the simplest, and most elegant, would have been $28 Qc4+ Qc7 29 Qb6!.$

\[ \text{Diagram 29a: after 10 Qa3} \]

\[ \text{Diagram 29b: after Black's 15th move} \]

\[ \text{Diagram 29c: after 27...Qb8} \]
Idea 30 – Pawn-Grabbing

Most attacking players would prefer to sacrifice a pawn for the initiative and a lead in development than to make risky pawn-grabs. However, for those seeking to unbalance the game, especially with the black pieces, it is a perfectly justifiable tactic. One should be willing to suffer more for a central pawn than for a wing pawn. Pawn-grabbers are more likely to survive in blocked positions; pawn-grabbing in open positions can be suicidal. Many sacrifices involve the black queen treating herself to the white b-pawn. This pawn is particularly attractive to pawn-hunters as its removal also causes positional damage to the queenside. I won’t go into the well-documented Najdorf Poisoned Pawn here, but instead take a couple of examples from the Trompowsky.

In diagram 30a (after 1 d4 ¤f6 2 ¤g5 £e4 3 £f4 c5 4 d5 ¤b6) it is surprisingly dubious for White to sacrifice his b-pawn (5 ¤e1 is the best way to defend the pawn). After 5 ¤d2 Black doesn’t play 5...¤xd2 6 ¤xd2 ¤xb2 7 e4, when life is tough, but the immediate 5...¤xb2! as after 6 £xe4 ¤b4+! 7 ¤d2 ¤xe4 White has a less harmonious position. 8 f3 ¤d4 9 ¤xd4 exd4 10 £e5 e6 and 8 £f3 d6 9 e3 ¤b4 10 c3 £a5 11 £bl g6 both give White insufficient compensation.

Diagram 30b arises after 1 d4 £f6 2 £g5 c5 3 d5 ¤b6 4 £c3 ¤xb2 5 ¤d2 ¤b6 6 e4. Vaganian blew away all-comers from this position in the 1970s, e.g. Vaganian-Kupre-chik, USSR Ch (Leningrad) 1974: 6...d6 7 f4 g6?! 8 e5! dxe5 9 fxe5 £fd7 10 £f3 £g7 11 £bl £d8 12 e6 £xe6 13 £g5 £f6 14 £b5+ £f8 15 dxe6 a6 16 £e3! £a5 17 0-0 (30c) with an overwhelming game for White. However, all is not so clear after 6...e5! 7 f4 d6, as the position remains quite blocked.
Idea 31 – Approach Play

In some ways the final combination is the easy bit of the game. There are many players who would have absolutely no problem in solving the mate in 6 at the end if only they could get themselves into a position to deliver it. A successful build-up often requires a great deal of subtlety as well as flexibility, even if the underlying plan is rather crude. The following game is a good example. Basically White just wants to mate Black on the h-file but he has to be careful how he goes about it.

(31a) Anand-Topalov, Dortmund 1996. We pick up the play with Anand about to play 13 g4!, a standard attacking idea in the Classical Scheveningen but, rather surprisingly, a novelty in this particular position. A month earlier, Kasparov had preferred the prophylactic move 13 g1 against Topalov. 13...d7 (13...c4 14 c1 e5 15 f5 exf4 16 g5 is good for White – this is why Anand feels there is no need for 13 g1) 14 g2 (getting out of the way of the major pieces) 14...f8 15 w e1 b6 16 d1 b7 17 w h4 d6 (31b) 18 de2! (18 f3 is premature, allowing Black to break out with 18...xd4 19 xd4 e5!) 18...b4 19 d2 d8 (on 19...d5, 20 e5 keeps the centre blocked, while after 19...g6 20 f3 g7 21 h3 f8 Black has defended h7 but 22 f5 still gives White a strong attack) 20 g5 f6 (31c) (Black reacts rather than awaiting his fate; Anand points out that 20...g6 21 f3 c8 22 h3 h5 is just met by 23 g3 and a crushing sacrifice on h5) 21 d4! (it is usually a good idea to ask yourself what the opponent’s last move has changed – in this case the e6-square has become weak, so Anand immediately targets it) 21...fxg5 (after 21...c6 22 gxf6 both 22...xf6 23 e5 and 22...xf6 23 xf6 xf6 24 e5 are good for White according to
Anand; note how he is not attacking at all costs but will quite happily take the favourable endgame if it arises) 22 fxg5 \( \text{Qc6} \) 23 \( \text{Hd5f2!} \) \( \text{Ee8} \) (Black avoided 23...\( \text{Qxd4} \) 24 \( \text{Qxd4} \) \( \text{Qe5} \) 25 \( \text{Qxe5} \) dxe5 26 \( \text{Hf7} \) but he is now ready to play this variation as he can meet \( \text{Hf7} \) with ...\( \text{Qc7} \) 24 \( \text{Qce2!} \) (ensuring that a knight remains on d4) 24...\( \text{Qc5} \) (on 24...\( \text{Qde5} \) White could reach a favourable queen vs two rooks position starting with 25 \( \text{Qxe6} \), but Anand is unsure whether this is stronger than the quiet 25 b3) 25 \( \text{Qxc6} \) \( \text{Qxc6} \) 26 \( \text{Qd4} \) \( \text{Qd7} \) (31d) ("I don't think either of us looked at 26...\( \text{Qxa4} \) for more than one second. In such a position you just know that Black cannot afford to go pawn grabbing. White would continue with 27 \( \text{Hf3} \)" - Anand) 27 e5! (excellent chess; on 27 \( \text{Hf3} \) Topalov had planned 27...e5 28 \( \text{Qf5} \) g6 29 \( \text{Qh3} \) h5!) 27...\( \text{dxe5} \) 28 \( \text{Qf3} \) \( \text{Qc6} \) (28...\( \text{Qd6} \) 29 \( \text{Qd2} \) leads to serious trouble on the d-file, while Anand believes that after 28...\( \text{Wc7} \) 29 g6 h6 30 \( \text{Qg5} \) White's attack will eventually triumph) 29 \( \text{Qxe5} \) \( \text{Qxg2+} \) 30 \( \text{Qxg2} \) \( \text{Qc7} \) 31 \( \text{Qg4!} \) \( \text{Qh8} \) (White was threatening \( \text{Qf6+} \)) 32 \( \text{Wh3!} \) \( \text{Qd5} \) (the only way to stop White's breakthrough with g6 was to play 32...g6 himself but then Black would capitulate on the dark squares; Anand suggests 33 \( \text{Qf4} \) 33 g6 h6 (31e) (now we get to the easy bit of the game) 34 \( \text{Qxh6!} \) (even if you can't calculate as accurately as Anand, this, or 34 \( \text{Qxh6} \), which also wins though less convincingly, is an easy move to find) 34...\( \text{gxh6} \) 35 g7+! \( \text{Qxg7} \) (35...\( \text{Qxg7} \) 36 \( \text{Qxf8+} \) \( \text{Qxf8} \) 37 \( \text{Wxh6+} \) \( \text{Qg8} \) 38 \( \text{Qf6+} \) and mate next move) 36 \( \text{Qxh6} \) (threatening 37 \( \text{Qf7+} \) and 38 \( \text{Wh8#} \)) 36...\( \text{Wxg2+} \) 37 \( \text{Wxg2} \) \( \text{Qxh6} \) 38 \( \text{Wg6} \) (31f) 1-0. A beautifully controlled game from Anand. The key moves which kept this control were 18 \( \text{Qde2} \), 21 \( \text{Qd4} \), 24 \( \text{Qce2} \) and 27 e5.
Idea 32 – The King in the Middlegame

It’s not uncommon for the king to participate in a mating attack in the ending, but in the middlegame it is a rare sight.

(32a) Short-Timman, Tilburg 1991. Black is caught in a paralysing grip but how is White to increase the pressure? Short finds a delightful solution: 31 \( \text{h}2! \text{c}8 \) (Black needs both his queen and bishop on the long diagonal; on 31...\( \text{c}8, \) 32 \( g4! \) starts a decisive attack, while 31...\( wxa4 \) is refuted more simply by 32 \( \text{g}5 ) 32 \text{g}3! \) (the king is simply waltzing in to \( h6 ) 32...\( \text{e}8 33 \text{f}4 \text{e}8 34 \text{g}5! \) (32b) 1-0. The only move to stop \( h6 \) is 34...\( h7 \) but then 35 \( wgx6+ \) \( h8 \) 36 \( wh6+ \) \( g8 \) 37 \( f6! \) mates.

Use of the king before the ending is generally less extreme. In blocked positions it may waddle across the board to safer pastures but even this is less common than fleeing for its life with the enemy in hot pursuit (see Ideas 38 and 39).

When the opponent is tied down, top players often take a time-out to improve their king position (e.g. \( g3 \) and \( g2 \)) while sometimes the king is used to help exchange off a ‘bad’ fianchettoed bishop, e.g. from diagram 32c, Spassky-Fischer, Sveti Stefan/Belgrade (28) 1992 continued 12...\( h7!\) 13 \( e2 \) \( h6 \) 14 \( xh6 \) \( xh6 \) 15 0-0-0 \( g7 \) and Black has achieved his objective, though White’s extra space still gives him an edge.

The king may also help support a kingside pawn advance. For example, with a king on \( g2 \) and pawns on \( f2, \) \( g3 \) and \( h4 \) against a black knight on \( f5 \), the advance \( g4 \) may be desirable but first White has to protect his \( h \)-pawn, and \( h3 \) is one way of doing this. In general, though, the king is best kept under cover in the middlegame.
Idea 33 – Get Yourself a Pet

Every aspiring player should have at least one opening variation which they adore and which they are willing to suffer for. The more dubious (or at least risky) the variation the better, as then one will have to work harder to repair it after each setback. This sort of analytical work may not always be beneficial in the short term, especially if one is neglecting other variations, but it should instil a healthy (for a chess-player) combination of stubbornness and creativity.

My first pet was the Polugaevsky Variation – 1 e4 c5 2 d3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 xxd4 d6 5 c3 a6 6 g5 e6 7 f4 b5 (33a). I made its acquaintance not through any of its numerous spectacular games but in a purely scientific manner. Taking my newly acquired copy of ECO B I set myself the task of replacing the O’Kelly (33b) variation as my main weapon against 1 e4. I knew what I was looking for – a variation which did not finish with the dreaded symbol ± but offered Black an equal or unclear game. I started at the beginning and worked right through the book, checking every symbol. I had almost given up hope by the time I found it on page 470 out of 502 (at least in the 2nd edition – I no longer have the 1st edition). I had, in fact, stumbled upon one of the most complex of all variations but this was no deterrent to a fourteen-year-old boy who simply learnt the whole thing off by heart (not to mention the rest of the Najdorf). What I hadn’t realized was that virtually everyone had given up 6 g5 against the Najdorf – it was still the main line in all my books. The interminable wait for my first ‘Polly’ was finally ended by an unsuspecting Tony Kosten. It was a fabulous game. We definitely reached the position in diagram 33c and soon afterwards I had no pawns left and all my pieces formed...
a protective huddle around my king. I eventually won in a time-scramble, and when the following week I achieved a favourable position against Grandmaster John Nunn I was completely hooked. Over the next few years I spent an incredible amount of time analysing the Polly, refusing to accept, against mounting evidence, that White could achieve the better game. I only gave up when it came under simultaneous fire in three different variations. One, I could always repair ... but three! Anyway, by now I had a new and very demanding pet (see Idea 23). There wasn’t really room for both of them in my life.

The following trilogy with Jim Plaskett is one of my most vivid memories of my Polly days:

(from diagram 33a) 8 e5 dxe5 9 fxe5 \(\text{wc7!} \) 10 exf6 (10 \(\text{we2} \) is the other main line) 10...\(\text{we5}+\) 11 \(\text{e2} \) \(\text{wxg5} \) 12 0-0 \(\text{we5}!\) 13 \(\text{f3} \) (33d) and now:

Plaskett-Gallagher, Telford 1982 (January): 13...\(\text{e5}+\) 14 \(\text{h1} \) \(\text{xf6} \) 15 \(\text{e4} \) \(\text{e7} \) 16 \(\text{g5} \) f5! (33e) 17 \(\text{h5}+\) g6 18 \(\text{h7} \) \(\text{f7}!\) 19 \(\text{g5+} \) g7 20 \(\text{xc5} \) \(\text{xc5}!\) 21 \(\text{f3} \) and now the obvious 21...\(\text{a7} \) would give Black the better game. Instead, I played the disastrous \text{zwischenzug} (see Idea 82 for more on this theme) 21...\(\text{we5}??\), when 22 h3 \(\text{a7} \) 23 \(\text{el} \) \(\text{xf6} \) (33f) 24 \(\text{xe6}!\) \(\text{xe6} \) 25 \(\text{xe6} \) \(\text{xe6} \) 26 \(\text{d4}+\) and 27 \(\text{xa7} \) gave White a decisive advantage, 1-0 in 34. The trilogy continues in the next Idea.
Idea 34 – Get Yourself a Pet (2)

A couple of months later and Plaskett-Gallagher, Chichester ARC Young Masters 1982 followed the previous game until diagram 33e, when White unleashed the surprising move 17 b4!?. Opening the f-file (17...fxe4) looked suicidal so I settled, with some trepidation, for 17...axb4. There followed 18 @h5+ g6 19 @xh7 @f7! (34a) 20 @xf5+ (I certainly hadn’t seen that one coming) 20...exf5 21 @eg5+ @g7? 22 @d4+ (oh dear – that’s why he played b4) 22...@h6 23 @xh8 gxh5 24 @f8+! @xg5 25 h4+ 1-0. Black loses his queen. A splendid game, even if analysis showed that Black is better after 21...@g8! 22 @d5+ @e6! 23 @xa8 @g7!.

In late summer I got another crack at Jim. This time the setting was a decisive last-round game in the Civil Service Open. Again we reached diagram 33d but this time I got the novelty in first: 13...@e3+ 14 @b1 gxf6!? (it was not my idea though – it had been played for the first time a few days previously in a club match by my old Polly sparring partner John Ady in the game Gallagher-Ady; the game rapidly ended in a draw and we started to analyse) 15 @e1? (facing a new move, Plaskett refrains from the critical lines such as 15 @d5 and 15 @xb5+; in fact, later analysis showed that White is winning after 15 @d5! exd5 16 @xd5!) 15...@d7 16 @d1 @b6 17 @d4 @g8 18 @h5 @b7 19 @e4 0-0-0! (34b) (a real rarity in the Polly) 20 @xf7 @g4! 21 @c3+ (to defend the knight on d4) 21...@b8 22 @g3 @e5! 23 @xe6 @xd1 24 @xd1 @f2! 25 @c7+ @a7 (the black queen combines defence along the a7-g1 diagonal with a mating attack against the white king) 26 @g1 @f3! 27 @f1 @h4!! (34c) 0-1. Revenge has rarely tasted so sweet.
Idea 35 – Minority Attack

The term ‘minority attack’ in chess is most frequently used to describe an attack where the player with fewer pawns on the queen-side advances them to try to create weaknesses in the enemy camp. The main reason that minority attacks are successful is that the attacker is more active in this sector of the board – it stands to reason that if you have a pawn missing, there will also be a half-open file to operate on. I don’t think this point is stressed strongly enough in many text books. The Minority Attack for White is most closely associated with the Queen’s Gambit. Van Wely-I.Sokolov, Belgrade ECC 1999 (35a) is a typical example where White intends to weaken Black’s structure by playing b4-b5. Play continued 12 a3 a5 Now, in order to carry out his plan White will have to allow the a-file to be opened. Black will also be pleased not to have a potentially weak a-pawn to worry about, but on the minus side the a-file may eventually fall into White’s hands. 13 a3 a6 14 h4 g7 15 b4 axb4 16 axb4 f5 17 xf5 xf5 18 xf6 xf6 19 b5 a5 20 bxc6 bxc6 21 e2 ec8 22 f4 (35b). White has achieved his objective and can claim a slight advantage. The remainder of the game is instructive – White doesn’t win by picking off the weak pawns but by penetrating to the 7th and 8th ranks and delivering mate. ‘Getting round the back’ as it’s known. 22...wd8 23 d3 d6 24 xa1 xa1 25 xa1 c4 26 a6 we8 27 h1 e7 28 fe5 c5 29 dxc5 xe5 30 xex5 xc5 31 b2 wc8 32 g4 c1+ 33 h2 wc3 34 bb8+ g7 (35c) (after 34...wc8 35 e5! g5 36 b6! White wins) 35 a7! h5 36 e5 b1 37 xb1 xe5+ 38 g1 wd6 39 wb7 f8 40 a5 1-0.
Idea 36 – The Exchange Sacrifice: Hodgson Style

Julian Hodgson’s games are full of interesting exchange sacrifices. One of his favourite ploys is to lure the opposing queen into a corner (by offering a rook as bait) and then crush the opponent while he is extricating the queen.

1 d4 .df6 2 6.g5 c5 3 6.xf6 gxf6 4 d5 wb6 5 wb1 f5 6 c4! 6h6 7 e3 f4 8 exf4 6xf4 (36a) 9 wb4! (otherwise Black has opened the position for his bishops) 9...wb2 10 6d2! wxa1 11 wxc3 wb2??! (now White develops a strong attack; it could have been prevented by 11...d6 but then 12 wb2 cuts off the queen’s escape route; theory is yet to decide on who has the advantage after 12...dg8) 12 d6! (Black is going to suffer on the dark squares and with his queenside development) 12...c6 13 d3 exd6 14 0-0 6e5 15 wb6! 0-0 16 d5 6e8 17 wg5+ dg6 18 wg6+ 6f8 19 wb6+ e7 20 d5+ d8 21 xg6 hxg6 22 bc3! (slamming the door on the queen once again) 1-0.

(36b) Hodgson-Stohl, Isle of Man 1995. Black has just met Hodgson’s 13 a2-a3 with 13...c8-b7 – no prizes for guessing White’s next: 14 axb4! wxa1 15 6xe2 wa6 16 d4 d6 17 wg4 wb6 and now Hodgson, remaining true to his style, opted for the unclear 18 df5 a5 19 xg7, whereas 18 dx5 20 wxd6 xc3 21 bxc3 is virtually winning.

(36c) Hodgson-D.Gurevich, Bermuda 1998. The strategy can also backfire. White has just played 14 wae1-d2, planning to pick up the queen with d3. There followed 14...b5! 15 d5 de6! 16 ec1 (16 d3 xd5 17 exd5 wxc3+ 18 wxc3 6xc3+ 19 6xc3 b4+) 16...xd5 17 exd5 b4 18 d1 c4! 0-1 as the black queen escapes.
Idea 37 – Line-Opening Sacrifices

(37a) Gallagher-Marcoli, Mendrisio 1998. White has strong kingside pressure but no straightforward breakthrough. The solution is quite simple as long as you are looking to invite everyone to the party: 19 c5! (now the light-squared bishop takes centre stage) 19... dx5 (19...bxc5 20 c4 f8 21 xh7! xh7 22 fxg6 h6 23 g5 and White wins; 19...cxc5 can be met by 20 c4 or by 20 fxg6 and 21 xf6) 20 fxg6 hxg6 21 xf7! xf7 22 c4+ e8 (37b) (22 e7 23 w6+ and 24 w7#) 23 w7! (as usual a combination contains more than one of the basic tactical elements – now there is no defence to the threat of w8+) 23...e7 24 xg7+ d6 25 g5 and Black resigned in a couple more moves.

(37c) Gallagher-Fioramonti, Biel 1989. White has sacrificed an exchange for a strong attack but Black’s queenside counterplay appears to have arrived in the nick of time. True, I saw that 31 xh7 xh7 32 f6+(?) f7 33 h8+ g8 draws by perpetual check, but this did not satisfy me. However, the bishop is attacked and all the squares on the diagonal are out of bounds – except one! The surprising solution is 31 f5!!, when the bishop can’t be taken; 31...xf5 allows mate in two and 31...xf5 32 d7! is decisive now that the e-file is open and the d-pawn has cleared the way for a killing check on c5. In the game Black defended his e-pawn with 31...d7 (31...e8 is better, though White is still winning easily after 32 d7 or 32 g4) but the white bishop performed its second successive piece of magic: 32 xe6!! (the point is that 32...xe6 fails to 33 g7+ e8 34 d2) 32...xe6 33 d7! is terminal. Black resigned after 33...g6 34 c5+ f7 35 e7+.
Idea 38 – The Greatest King-Hunt Ever?

(38a) Kasparov-Topalov, Wijk aan Zee 1999. There have been some legendary king-hunts in the history of chess but few could stand comparison with this game. We pick up the story after Black’s 23rd move: 24 \texttt{xd}4!! cxd4? (sporting; 24...\texttt{b}6! is unclear) 25 \texttt{e}7+!! \texttt{b}6 (Black must advance; taking the second rook leads to mate after 25...\texttt{xe}7 26 \texttt{xd}4+ \texttt{b}8 27 \texttt{b}6+ followed by \texttt{c}6+, and retreating with 25...\texttt{b}8 also loses after 26 \texttt{xd}4, leading to mate) 26 \texttt{xd}4+ \texttt{xa}5 (26...\texttt{c}5 27 \texttt{xf}6+ \texttt{d}6 is refuted by 28 \texttt{e}6!! according to Kasparov’s second Dokhoian) 27 b4+ \texttt{xa}4 28 \texttt{xf}6 \texttt{xa}3 (Topalov goes down in flames; after 28...\texttt{d}6 30 \texttt{b}2! wins as Black can no longer defend with 30...\texttt{d}4 on account of 31 \texttt{xd}4 \texttt{xd}4 32 \texttt{xa}6##; apparently Topalov had reached as far as 29...\texttt{b}7 in his original calculations and believed that White had to acquiesce to a draw after 30 \texttt{c}7 \texttt{d}1+ 31 \texttt{b}2 \texttt{d}4+) 30 \texttt{xb}7! (Kasparov calculates that his attack is worth more than a rook) 30...\texttt{c}4 (30...\texttt{d}6 31 \texttt{b}6! \texttt{xb}6 32 \texttt{b}2! is one beautiful variation) 31 \texttt{xf}6 \texttt{xa}3 (Topalov goes down in flames; after 31...\texttt{d}1+ 32 \texttt{b}2 \texttt{a}8 33 \texttt{b}6 \texttt{d}4+ 34 \texttt{xd}4 \texttt{xd}4 35 \texttt{xf}7 a5 36 \texttt{e}6 axb4 37 \texttt{b}3+ \texttt{a}5 38 axb4+ \texttt{b}6 39 \texttt{hx}7 he would just have lost the ending) 32 \texttt{xa}6+ \texttt{xb}4 33 c3+! \texttt{xc}3 34 \texttt{a}1+ \texttt{d}2 35 \texttt{b}2+ \texttt{d}1 36 \texttt{f}1! (an elegant return home; the black queen can’t move as it must remain defending c2 and e2 to prevent mate) 36...\texttt{d}2 (38c) 37 \texttt{d}7## (it’s hard to believe this is a real game; everything falls into place so beautifully for White) 37...\texttt{xd}7 38 \texttt{xc}4 bxc4 39 \texttt{h}8 \texttt{d}3 40 \texttt{a}8 c3 41 \texttt{a}4+ \texttt{e}1 42 f4 f5 43 \texttt{c}1 \texttt{d}2 44 \texttt{a}7 1-0.
Idea 39 – More About Wandering Kings

In *The King-Hunt* (Nunn & Cozens, Batsford 1996) John Nunn offers some advice to prospective king-hunters. This advice includes not to be too lazy to calculate, not to over-sacrifice and that a quiet move cutting off the king’s line of escape may be more effective than continual checking. I would like to add that it is not necessary to have the Doctor’s powers of calculation to indulge in a good king-hunt – as long as you’re sure the king is driven out into the open then it’s usually worth taking a risk – the variations can be calculated later. It is not that easy to mate the king in the middle of the board, though, as one has to control 9 squares to do so – much more than in the corner. Take a look at the following remarkable example:

(39a) Timman-I. Sokolov, Dortmund 1999. Admittedly queens have been exchanged, but White’s investment is small (two pawns) and all the other pieces apart from a pair of knights remain on a wide-open board. Play continued 23...\textl minority move scored!}\textf 25 \texte5+ \textd5! (the threat was \textg4) 27 \textd1+ \textc4! 28 \texte2+ \textb3 29 \textb1 (39b) (I’ve looked at 29 \textxe5 \textxe5 30 \textb1+ but I can’t see a win following 30...\texta4) 29...\textf3+ 30 \textxf3 \textxf3 31 \textg2 \textg4 32 \textxc5 \textxc5 33 \textd4+ \textc4 34 \textbc1+ \textxd4 35 \textfd1+ \texte5 36 \textxc5+ \textf6 (39c)

What an incredible sequence of moves – the king is relatively safe now that a couple of pieces have been exchanged off. White was probably more than happy to get his pawns back while Black was finally getting his queenside out.

37 \textxc7 \textf5 38 \textxb7 \texte8 39 \textd6+ \texte6 40 \textxe6+ \textxe6 41 \textxa7 \textb3 42 \texta6 \texte5 43 \texta5+ 1/2-1/2. Black’s activity compensates for the pawn.
Idea 40 – The Pawn-Storm

When castling on opposite wings has occurred then it is not unusual to find one or both sides flinging their pawns down the board towards the opposing king. Indeed, in many such positions it is even essential to do so. The idea of the pawn-storm is simply to create weaknesses in the enemy king position and to open lines for one’s own heavy pieces so they can deliver the knockout punch. The pawn-storm is especially effective if a pawn in front of the opposing king has moved, as then less work is required to open lines. Material often needs to be invested to fuel the attack and one shouldn’t hesitate in this area. Pawn-storms often develop into straight races between the respective attacks but occasionally it is the player who takes the appropriate defensive measures who eventually triumphs (such as $\text{h}1$ for White or a well-timed ...$\text{f}5$ for Black). The opening most closely associated with pawn-storming is the Sicilian Defence. Here is a typical example.

(40a) Socko-Maciejewski, Polish Ch 1997. 15 $\text{g}6$?! (the quickest way to open lines) 15...$\text{b}4$?! (15...$\text{hxg}6$ 16 $\text{h}5$ looks suicidal and 15...$\text{fxg}6$ 16 $\text{h}3$ risky but the alternative 15...$\text{xe}5$ is considered to be unclear) 16 $\text{gxh}7+$ $\text{xh}7$ (16...$\text{hxh}7$ 17 $\text{d}5$! is similar) 17 $\text{d}5$! (as usual, several well-known themes work together to make up the attack; the point of this sacrifice is just to gain access to $f5$ for the bishop) 17...exd5 18 $\text{e}5$+! $\text{g}7$ 19 $\text{g}1+$ $\text{xh}7$ (40b) (19...$\text{h}8$ 20 $\text{h}6$ wins) 20 $\text{h}3$ $\text{e}5$ (after 20...$\text{f}5$ 21 $\text{f}4$! I can’t see a defence) 21 $\text{f}5+$ $\text{g}6$ 22 $\text{h}5$ $\text{g}7$ 23 $\text{hxg}6$ $\text{g}8$ 24 gxf7+ $\text{xf}7$ 25 $\text{h}6$ $\text{f}6$ 26 $\text{wh}5+$ $\text{f}8$ 27 $\text{hxg}8+$ $\text{xg}8$ 28 $\text{e}6+$ (40c) 1-0.

40a: after Black’s 14th move

40b: after 19...$\text{h}8$

40c: after 28 $\text{e}6+$
Idea 41 – Opposite-Coloured Bishops can be a Trump

It is hard to shake off childhood truisms and many players still believe that virtually all opposite-coloured bishop positions are drawn. This is despite the fact that numerous books teach that while opposite-coloured bishops may have drawish tendencies in the endgame, their presence in the middlegame helps the attacker (he can attack the squares his bishop controls). Diagram 41a, for example, may be familiar to those of you who have already consulted Idea 87. There, note '2a' concludes that White has the advantage due to his better bishop. I have an overwhelming score with White from this position but time after time I am amazed to find my opponent claiming that I got nothing out of the opening. I suspect Black can hang on with excellent defence and an appreciation of the potential dangers, but in practice it is more often something like this:

(41a) Gallagher-Hahn, Passau 1993.
13...\texttt{wa5}?! (the queen should stay near the kingside) 14 \texttt{d6} \texttt{d8} 15 \texttt{d2} \texttt{b6} (Black releases his bishop but White gets a passed pawn; note that 15...d4 could be met by 16 \texttt{b4}) 16 d4 \texttt{a6} 17 \texttt{fe1} bxc5 18 dxc5 \texttt{c4} 19 a3 (41b). I saw no reason to give up the a-pawn. The difference in power between the bishops is quite striking here. Black’s bishop is patrolling thin air with no hope of finding gainful employment while White’s is supporting the dangerous passed pawn, preventing Black’s rooks from challenging on the b-file and is about to participate in a mating attack against the black king. 19...\texttt{b5} 20 \texttt{e3} a6 (completely hopeless but the position is indefensible) 21 \texttt{g3} \texttt{d7} (41c) 22 \texttt{xg7+ xg7} 23 \texttt{g5+} 1-0. 23...\texttt{h8} 24 \texttt{e5+}. 

41b: after 19 a3

41c: after 21...\texttt{d7}
Idea 42 – Blitz Chess: The Perfect Testing Ground

Blitz games are a lot of fun but, taken seriously, they can also provide valuable experience in lines one plans to adopt in future tournament games. Croatian GM and former World Junior Champion Ognjen Cvitan is a leading blitz player. He likes nothing better than to work hard on his openings and then test his new ideas in lengthy blitz sessions. The combination we shall now treat ourselves to achieved fame after a Bundesliga game with Ftačnik. Several months prior to this Cvitan, a fellow King’s Indian fan, had taken great pride in demonstrating his five-minute game with Epishin to me where he won with the identical combination. Here are the games:

Ftačnik-Cvitan, Bundesliga 1997/8. 1 d4 ²f6 2 ²f3 g6 3 c4 ²g7 4 ²c3 0-0 5 e4 d6 6 ²e2 e5 7 0-0 ²c6 8 d5 ²e7 9 ²d2 ²e8 10 b4 f5 11 c5 ²f6 12 f3 f4 13 ²c4 g5 14 a4 ²g6 15 ²a3 ²f7 16 b5 dxc5 17 ²xc5 h5 (the first new move of the game) 18 a5 g4 19 b6 g3 20 h1 (to enable the bishop to defend on g1) 20...²h7 (42a) 21 d6 ²h4 22 ²g1 ²h3! 23 bxc7? (now White gets mated; Cvitan knew that White could defend with 23 gxh3! ²xh3 24 ²f2! gxf2 25 ²xf2, when White has excellent compensation for the exchange, but he was willing to take a risk for such a wonderful combination) 23...²xg2+! 24 ²xg2(42b) 24...²h3+!! 25 ²xh3 ²g5+ 26 ²g2 ²h4+ 0-1 (on account of 27 ²h1 g2#).

The blitz game with Epishin shows that White can’t escape the mate even if he has the f1-square at his disposal. From diagram 42a: 21 ²b5 ²h4 22 ²g1 ²h3! 23 ²e1? ²xg2+! 24 ²xg2 ²h3+!! 25 ²xh3 ²g5+ 26 ²g2 ²h4+ 27 ²f1 g2+ 28 ²f2 ²h3# (42c).
Idea 43 – The Benoni Breakthrough

If White can play e5 in Benoni type positions and meet ...dxe5 with fxe5 then Black is liable to be blown away. If this is not possible, and it usually isn’t as Black tends to have e5 overprotected, then there is another dangerous attacking idea – to play e5, and meet ...dxe5 with f5! For his minor investment White usually achieves a strong passed d-pawn, a wonderful blockading square on e4 for a knight and attacking chances against the black king either on the f-file with fxg6 or by the advance f6. It’s important for White to play e5 first (and not just f5) as the pawn that is lured onto e5 is a hindrance to Black – it blocks in his bishop and denies him use of the e5-square.

(43a) Adianto-Ru.Gunawan, Jakarta 1996 is a devastating example. 17 e5! dxe5 18 d6 (a nice bonus but the black queen is often on c7 in Benoni positions) 18...Wd8 19 Qf4 Qg7 20 f5! gxf5 (horrible, but Black is hoping to manoeuvre his knight to d4 and the immediate 20...Qf8 is crushed by 21 f6) 21 Axf5 Qf8 22 Axf5 23 Axf5 (43b) (see Idea 25 for similar sacrifices) 23...Ae6 24 Axd4 Axd4 25 Axf6+ Bh8 26 Ah5 Axe2+ 27 Af1! Axf6 28 Wh6! 1-0.

(43c) Bellon-Nunn, Zurich 1984. 19 e5! dxe5 20 d6!. Nunn had expected the immediate 20 f5, which is also strong. He soon realized, though, that things were pretty dire after 20...Wxd6 21 A,e4 We7 22 f5! – in fact the position is completely lost. White just piles up against f7 with A,g5 ideas in the air as well. This would have given us a very thematic example but, after 20...Wxd6, Bellon preferred the flashy 21 Wxf7+?! Axf7 22 fxe5+ A,g8 23 exd6 with a very good ending but much more work to do than in the above line – and in fact he went on to lose (0-1, 41).
Idea 44 – The King’s Indian Blockade

In the King’s Indian, there is an extremely closely related idea to the previous one. Black plays ...e4, White captures f3xe4 and then Black advances ...f5-f4 (or occasionally playing ...fxg4) having activated his g7-bishop and secured the e5-square. The soundness of the sacrifice depends on whether White can break the blockade on e5 and this usually means manoeuvring at least two knights (one after the other) into f3. Here is a famous example:

(44a) Kotov-Gligorić, Zurich Ct 1953.
11...e4! 12 fxe4 f4! 13 f2 d7 14 g1 (the knight heads for f3; 14 e5 would be positionally desirable but after 14...xe5 15 xh7+ h8 White is in great tactical danger) 14...g5 15 f1 e5 16 f3 e7 17 xe5 xe5 18 0-0-0 f6 19 h3 d7 (Black prepares his queenside advance) 20 d3 a6 21 b1! (44b) 21...f3!! (if the knight had made it to f3 then the blockade would have been history) 22 gxf3 h5! 23 d2 f4 24 f1 b5!. In addition to his suffocating blockade Black now has a strong queenside attack. Bronstein, annotating in his legendary book on the 1953 Candidates tournament, couldn’t quite understand how Black didn’t win from this position (½-½, 41).

(44c) Petursson-Gallagher, San Bernardino 1992. White has just played the apparently powerful move 16 g2-g4, but Black countered in traditional fashion: 16...e4! 17 fxe4 fxg4! 18 df1 (18 e5+ f5 is an important point) 18...e5 (now Black has his blockade) 19 wd2 f3! 20 g3 (20 xh6 wf6! is very good for Black) 20...h4 21 ce2 af8 with a dominating position for Black. This time he’s not even a pawn down (0-1, 56).
Idea 45 – The Keres Attack

Any attacking player worth his salt must include the Keres Attack (6 g4 against the Scheveningen) in his repertoire. Indeed, many Scheveningen players fear it so much that they have switched to a Najdorf move-order. Not former World no. 3 Andrei Sokolov though. The Scheveningen is his pet and after every setback he just retreats to lick his wounds and patch it up.

(45a) Gallagher-A.Sokolov, Swiss League 1996. This is one of the main lines of the Keres Attack where Sokolov has just played 16...f8-e7 instead of the well-known capture 16...xf2 (met by 17 e5!). Play continued 17 e5! d5 (I was familiar with the game Belotti-Sokolov from the previous round of the Swiss League where Sokolov had been blown away after 17...xg5 18 xg5 d5 19 xh5 gxh5 20 f6 f8 21 xd5!!) 18 xh5! gxh5 19 e4 dxe4 20 xd7+ f8. We were still following Sokolov’s preparation. At home he had checked 21 e3 b5 and 21 xe7+ xe7 22 d6 xf2 23 xb7 f4+, which are fine for Black, but he had failed to notice the powerful 21 f6! (45b).

1) The point is that after 21...xf6 22 exf6 d8, trapping the queen, White has the beautiful 23 c5!! Now 23...xd7? 24 xd7+ and 23...xc5? 24 xd8+! are obviously not on; that leaves 23...g8 as the only move to prevent xxe6++; but then 24 xh5! a5 (45c) (White was threatening 25 h7) 25 h8!! xh8 (25...xd7 26 xd7+ e8 27 xg8#) 26 xg6+! xe6 27 g7+ e8 28 f7+ and mate next move.

2) In the game, 21...h6 22 wd2?!, gaining a key tempo, was clearly favourable for White, but even better is 22 hg1! xf6 23 exf6 d8 24 c5 xf6 25 xd8+! xd8 26 xd8+ xd8 27 d7+ e7 28 xf6 xf6 29 d2, with an excellent endgame.

45a: after 16...f8-e7

45b: after 21 f6!

45c: after 24 a5
Idea 46 – More Keres Attack

In the Keres Attack Black has two main defensive strategies. Firstly he can play 6...h6 to hold up White’s kingside advance (see previous Idea) while, secondly, he can ignore White and seek his own play in the centre or on the queenside. Here is an example of the latter strategy.

Gallagher-Vehi Bach, Biel 1995. 1 e4 c5 2 d4 f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 cxd4 f6 5 c3 d6 6 g4! c6 7 g5 d7 8 e3 e7 9 h4 0-0 10 Wh5! (10 Wd2 and 10 We2 are major alternatives) 10...a6 11 0-0-0 Whd4 12 Whd4 b5 13 e5! (46a) (at last! I had been waiting over three years to play this move and I had all but given up hope of ever getting it in; the point was that I had felt morally obliged to reveal all in Beating the Sicilian 3 and that book was now at the printers, just a few weeks from publication) 13...d5? (in BTS3 I devoted 3½ pages to lines such as 13...b7, 13...g6 and 13...dxe5 but had virtually ignored this move; closing the centre when your opponent is attacking on the wing – weren’t we warned about that in kindergarten?) 14 Whd3 g6 15 Whg4 Whc5 16 h5! (help yourself to the g-pawn, sir) 16...Whd4 17 Whxd4 Whxg5+ 18 f4 Wh7 19 hxg6 fxg6 (46b) (19...hxg6 20 Whh6 Whg7 21 Whh1 Whg8 22 Whxg6! wins) 20 f5!! (time to blast open the kingside; 20 Whxd5 Whf7 is less clear) 20...gxf5 (20...Whxf5 21 Whxf5 Whg5+ 22 Whb1 Whxf5 23 Whxd5!) 21 Whxd5! exd5 (the rather nice point is that 21...Whf7 is now refuted by 22 Whxf5!!) 22 Whd1+ Whh8 23 e6+ Whf6 (23...Whf6 24 Whxf5! Whxd4 25 Whxh7# and 23...Whf6 24 exd7 Whd7 25 Whxh7+! are how the other interpositions on f6 fare) 24 Whxf5 Wha7 (46c) (both 24...Whxe6 25 Whxh7! and 24...Whg8 25 Whxf6+! lead to mate) 25 Whxh7! Whxh7 26 Whxa7! 1-0. The wait was almost worth it.
Idea 47 – \( \text{Qd5} \) Sacrifices in the Sicilian

The \( \text{Qd5} \) sacrifice is part of Sicilian folklore. Sometimes it is played to develop an attack on the e-file or to keep the black king in the centre. On other occasions the aim is to follow up with \( \text{Qd4-f5} \). The sacrifice may also be played to cut the black position in two, making it difficult for him to transfer his queenside pieces to the defence of the king. Here is a recent game with some analysis which may be of theoretical importance:

Sadvakasov-Kasimdzhanov, Lausanne 1999. 1 e4 c5 2 \( \text{Qf3} \) \( \text{Qc6} \) 3 \( \text{b5} \) e6 4 0-0 \( \text{ge7} \) 5 \( \text{c3} \) a6 6 \( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{xc6} \) 7 d4 cxd4 8 \( \text{exd4} \) \( \text{wc7} \) 9 \( \text{xc6} \) \( \text{xc6} \) 10 \( \text{Ke1} \) \( \text{Ke7} \) (47a) 11 \( \text{Qd5} \)? (previously 11 \( \text{Qg4} \) had been played) 11...exd5 (11...\( \text{Qd8} \) 12 \( \text{Qg4} \) looks good for White) 12 exd5 \( \text{wd6} \) 13 \( \text{Qg5} \) f6 14 \( \text{Qf4} \) ! \( \text{xf4} \) 15 d6 \( \text{Qd8} \) (47b) (the reason why White forced ...f6 is apparent in the line 15...0-0 16 \( \text{Qd5}+ \) \( \text{Qh8} \) 17 dxe7 \( \text{Qe8} \) 18 \( \text{Wf7} \) )

16 \( \text{Qxe7} \)??

16 dxe7+ requires serious analysis. After 16...\( \text{Qe8} \) 17 \( \text{Qh5}+ \) g6 18 \( \text{wa5} \) I'm not enamoured with Black's survival chances following 18...\( \text{Qf7} \) 19 e8\( \text{Q}+ \) \( \text{xe8} \) 20 \( \text{xe8} \) \( \text{Qxe8} \) 21 \( \text{Qe1}+ \) \( \text{Qf7} \) 22 \( \text{Wd8} \). Black should play 18...b6! to liberate his queenside, when 19 \( \text{Xxb6} \) \( \text{Qf7} \) 20 e8\( \text{Q}+ \) is not so clear now. Alternatively White can take a draw with 20 \( \text{Wb3}+ \) \( \text{Qe8} \) 21 \( \text{Wb6} \) or play on with something like 20 \( \text{Qad1} \).

16...\( \text{b5} \)? (16...\( \text{a5} \)! would have activated the queen's rook and targeted the pawn on d6; one key point is that 17 \( \text{Wa5} \) a6 18 \( \text{Qd1} \) fails to 18...\( \text{Qxd6} \) ) 17 \( \text{Qd5} \) \( \text{Bb8} \) 18 \( \text{Qae1} \) \( \text{Qc4} \) 19 \( \text{Wh5} \) \( \text{Qg8} \) (19...g6 20 \( \text{Wh6} ! \) ) 20 \( \text{Qc5} \) \( \text{Qc4} \) (20...\( \text{Qb7} \) 21 \( \text{Wa3} ! \) ) 21 \( \text{We3} \) (47c) 21...\( \text{Qe6} \) (21...\( \text{Qg8} \) 22 \( \text{Qc3} ! \) ). White now took on e6 and won in a few moves but 22 \( \text{Wa3} ! \) was best.
Idea 48 – Originality Pays

At the age of 68, Viktor Korchnoi is still brimming with ideas. Here is one of his games from the 1999 FIDE World Championship.

Korchnoi-Dolmatov, Las Vegas FIDE KO Wch 1999: 1 c4 f5 2 d4 f6 3 g3 d6 4 d4 g6 5 g2 g7 6 0-0 0-0 7 c3 c6 (48a).

This is one of the main lines of the Leningrad Dutch, where White usually chooses between 8 b3 and 8 d5. In 1998, Korchnoi experimented with 8 c5 but not liking that, he was ready with another new idea this time.

8 wb3!? h8 9 d1 a6 10 w3!

8 wb3 had been played once or twice previously but not in conjunction with parking the queen on a3. As Black’s main idea is to play ...e5, the queen is well-placed to create pressure on the a3-f8 diagonal as well as supporting the advance of the b-pawn. Later in the decisive quickplay game (won by Korchnoi) he even preferred to play this manoeuvre without developing the queen’s knight (7 wb3, 8 d1, 9 w3).

10...w8 (Dolmatov, rather stubbornly, continues to play for ...e5) 11 b4 c7 (11...e5 12 b5 costs Black his d-pawn) 12 b2 e5? (this looks simply unplayable) 13 dxe5 dxe5 (48b) 14 w5! (an unexpected fork) 14...a6 15 b5! b6 (Black can’t have enjoyed playing this, but 15...cxb5 16 cxb5 c5 17 b6! is nasty) 16 w3 c5 (this is hopeless but Black didn’t like the look of 16...cxb5 17 cxb5 c5, when White’s bishops are dominant and tactics are in the air – 18 cxe5??) 17 bxc6 e4 18 d4 w7 19 a1 e6 20 c5 a6 21 d6 c7 (48c) 22 b7! 1-0. White’s original opening play made Dolmatov, one of the world’s leading authorities on the Dutch, look like a rank beginner.
Idea 49 – Surprising Castling

The longer the game progresses without a player having exercised his right to castle, the more likely that castling, if it happens, will have a shock effect. A couple of recent examples:

(49a) Berry-Teplitzky, Canada 1999: 18 \[E c1? \text{?}xe3! 19 \text{?}xc7 \text{?}xg4 20 \text{?}xb7 0-0-0!! 0-1.\]

(49b) O.Jackson-Gallagher, British Ch 1999: 25 \text{a}4 \text{b}4! 26 \text{cxb4} \text{c}4 27 \text{b}5 \text{axb5} 28 \text{axb5} 0-0-0! 29 \text{a}3 \text{b}8 30 \text{b}3 \text{c}5 31 \text{b}6 \text{c}6 32 \text{b}7 \text{c}7 33 \text{f}f3 \text{c}xb7 34 \text{xb7} \text{xb7} 35 \text{b}3 \text{b}4\] with a clear plus (0-1, 51).

(49c) I first made the acquaintance of Austrian grandmaster Josef Klinger when I roomed with him during a junior tournament in Italy in 1983. The diagram position (or something along those lines) was one of his party pieces. He bet the German delegation that they wouldn’t be able to solve a mate in two in 5 minutes. They of course scoffed at this and the stakes, rather large, were passed to a third party on Klinger’s insistence. He was anticipating trouble. The diagram position was set up. They were informed that castling is legal. Five minutes passed. The puzzled Germans gave up. Klinger revealed the solution: 1 \text{e}8\text{a}1? \text{a}1b1 2 0-0-0-0-0-0#!! (king to e3 and rook on e8 to e2). All hell broke loose. The arbiter was called over to adjudicate. He sensibly fetched the Italian version of the FIDE laws of chess, where it stated that castling consists of an unmoved king moving two squares towards an unmoved rook and the rook jumping one square over the king. Klinger pocketed the cash. He is now a professional poker player. FIDE have since added the crucial words ‘along the rank’. I have no news of the Germans.
Idea 50 – Snap Mates in the Endgame

Although the king has to be actively deployed in the ending, one must still pay attention to its safety. Here is a selection of mates in the endgame:

(50a) McDonald-Cs. Horvath, Zug 1991. White is on the defensive and looking for some counterplay against Black’s minority attack but his choice, 36 $\text{h}4$, shows that his sense of danger was out to lunch that day. After $36...\text{b}4 37 \text{axb}4 \text{axb}4 38 \text{d}1 \text{g}8$ White had to play $39 \text{gl}$ but he unsuspectingly chose $39 \text{g}3$, only to resign after $39...\text{g}4+!! 40 \text{hxg}4 (40 \text{xh}5$ is met by $40...\text{g}8$) $40...\text{h}xg4$ as $...\text{c}8-\text{h}8#$ is unstoppable.

(50b) We are nearing the end of Gallagher-Sutovsky, Biel 1996, a game which I played on far too long (it is completely drawn) as I kept on hoping my opponent would fall for $\text{c}4#$. He had several opportunities but not surprisingly he didn’t oblige ($1...\text{b}6$). However, in diagram 50b, Bernstein-NN, 1909 there was no escape for Black: $1 \text{c}5! \text{b}5 (1...\text{bxc}5 2 \text{c}4+ and 3 \text{a}4# or 1...\text{e}6 2 \text{b}7+ and 3 \text{a}4#) 2 \text{a}3!$ and Black is mated next move.

(50c) Short-Beliavsky, Linares 1992 features one of the most tragic blunders I’ve seen. Rather than retaining good winning chances with $58 \text{d}4$ or $58 \text{xf}6$, White boldly advanced with $58 \text{e}6??$ only to be stunned by $58...\text{c}8#$!

Don’t let these examples put you off playing aggressively with the king in the ending – they are the exception rather than the rule. Just remain on your guard.
Idea 51 – Liberating the King’s Indian Bishop

The King’s Indian bishop is a potential monster but it is often locked in by its own pawns. Some liberating techniques:

1) Playing ...e4: (51a) Raetsky-Gallagher, Hastings 1993/4. No self-respecting King’s Indian player would hesitate before playing 19...e4!, not only because it frees the bishop but also to prevent White from blockading on e4. After 20 \( \triangle x e 4 \) \( \triangle b 8 \) 21 \( \triangle g 3 \) \( \triangle x d 3 \) 22 \( \triangle x d 3 \) \( \triangle f 6 \)! 23 \( \triangle e 4 \) \( \triangle x b 2 \) 24 \( \triangle d 1 \) \( \triangle e 5 \) 25 \( \triangle g 1 \) \( \triangle b 4 \)! Black had a clear advantage.

2) The sacrifice on f4: (51b) Kiss-Gallagher, Oberwart 1993: 14...\( \triangle f 4 \)! 15 \( \triangle x f 4 \)?! (15 \( \triangle f 1 \) is more prudent) 15...\( \triangle x f 4 \) 16 \( \triangle x f 4 \) \( \triangle e 5 \) 17 \( \triangle x f 5 \) 18 f3 \( \triangle x e 4 \) 19 \( \triangle x e 4 \) \( \triangle f 5 \) 20 \( \triangle x e 4 \) \( \triangle x e 4 \)?! (I couldn’t resist it) 22 \( \triangle x c 4 \) \( \triangle x e 4 \) 23 \( \triangle x d 3 \) \( \triangle x g 2 \) 24 \( \triangle g 1 \) \( \triangle f 2 \) 25 \( \triangle d 1 \) \( \triangle a e 8 \) 26 \( \triangle e 1 \) (the critical line is 26 \( \triangle g 3 \) \( \triangle x e 2 \)! 27 \( \triangle x e 2 \) \( \triangle d 4 \)! 28 \( \triangle d 3 \) \( \triangle x b 2 \), where Black has at least a draw) 26...\( \triangle f 4 \)! 27 \( \triangle c 2 \) \( \triangle d 4 \)! 28 \( \triangle d 3 \) \( \triangle d e 4 \) 29 b3 \( \triangle f 6 \)!? (29...\( \triangle x e 2 \) \( \mp \)) 30 \( \triangle g 3 \)? \( \triangle x g 3 \)! 31 \( \triangle x g 3 \) \( \triangle x e 1 \) 32 \( \triangle d 2 \) \( \triangle g 5 \) 0-1.

3) Via h6: (51c) Tukmakov-Gallagher, Basle 1999 illustrates another key idea. This time White has his blockade on e4 and black’s bishop on g7 appears very passive. However, having played f3 and h3 the dark squares around White’s king have been weakened and with one little pawn move Black takes control of the game: 29...h5! 30 \( \triangle d 3 \) \( \triangle h 6 \) 31 \( \triangle e 1 \) \( \triangle d 5 \)! (the rook doesn’t want to be stuck behind a white knight on d6) 32 \( \triangle h 1 \) \( \triangle h 4 \)! (...\( \triangle x h 3 \) sacrifices are in the air) 33 \( \triangle e 2 \) \( \triangle d 8 \)! (exploiting the weakness of the back rank; note how the bishop on h6 covers crucial squares in the white camp) 34 \( \triangle c 4 \) \( \triangle d 1 \) 35 \( \triangle h 2 \) \( \triangle d 4 \) 36 \( \triangle f 2 \) \( \triangle c 1 \)! 37 \( \triangle b 3 \) \( \triangle e 4 \) 38 \( \triangle g 8 \) \( \triangle h 8 \) 0-1.
Idea 52 – Pawn Promotion

The knight is especially vulnerable to queen­ ing combinations and there is even the occa­ sional disaster in the opening, e.g.:

Terentiev-Gallagher, Liechtenstein 1990.
1 d4 f6 2 g5 e4 3 f4 c5 4 c3 b6 5 b3! cxd4 6 xb6 axb6 7 x8 (7 cxd4 c6 is promising for Black) 7...dxc3! 8 e5? (52a). All played instantaneously by my opponent, who believed he had every­ thing under control as 8...c2 9 c3 and 8...xb2 9 xb2 are not a worry. However, after 8...xa2!! he should have resigned (9 xa2 c2!). Later, I noticed in ECO: 1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 f3 f5 4 b3 b6 5 cxd5 b3 6 axb3 x3 1 dxc6! e4? 8 xa7!!.

(52b) There are many great studies com­ posed on the theme of pawn promotion – David and Goliath stories always tug at our heart strings – and I would like to show one example from Kotov in Play Like a Grand­ master which could easily arise in practical play. The solution is 1 c2! x8 2 e8+! xe8 3 d7 d6 4 x8 c8 8 c5 axb7 and White queens.

(52c) When the passed pawn is a rook’s pawn the knight has even greater trouble coping. It would not be easy to make prog­ ress in the following ending (Gallagher­ Pelletier, Biel 1996) if one was not familiar with the promotion trick used. Play contin­ ued 61 e2! (escaping the knight’s check­ ing range) 61...d5 62 b5! with the point that after 62...xb5 63 x7! x7 64 a6 the pawn is unstoppable (64...c6 65 a7). ‘Pawn on a6 beats a knight on b7’ has been part of my tactical armoury for many years. After 62 b5 the game concluded 62...xb5 63 x7 d4+ 64 f2 c6 65 b6 x5 66 xf6 and White soon won. Don’t forget the knight is still the ideal blockader of a passed pawn.
Idea 53 – The Magic of Mikhail Tal

If one is searching for attacking ideas, the games of Mikhail Tal provide an unparalleled source of inspiration. His style became slightly more rounded in the 1970s and 1980s but games such as the following were still the norm:

(53a) Tal-Velimirović, USSR-Yugoslavia 1979. We join the game, which has begun life as a relatively quiet English Opening, just after Tal castled. 12...e4 (Velimirović is another player most unlikely to shy away from complications) 13 d5 (13...f5 14 b5!) 14 exd5 w5 (now 15 b5 can be met by 15...exd5) 15 xf7! xf7 16 f3! (in return for his piece Tal achieves either a massive mobile pawn centre or open lines against the black king) 16...exd5 (16...xf3 17 e4!) 17 fxe4 xc3 18 xe4 xe4 19 w5+ e6 (19...g6 20 d5+ makes full use of the pin) 20 w3+ d6 (53b)

Better was 20...f7, when Tal would have taken the draw with 21 w5+. Sorry, that was a little joke – he, of course, would have continued; 21 f5! was his intention, which he assessed as unclear.

21 b4! (there’s going to be no sanctuary on the queenside) 21 c7 22 a1 c8 23 f5! (preventing 23...b8 on account of 24 e5+ a8 25 xf6!) 23...g4 24 e5+ d7 25 f1 e4? (25...c4 would have staved off immediate defeat though Tal believes that White still has a clear advantage) 26 c4 c6 27 h3 e6 28 xf6 gxf6 (53c) 29 e4! xa2 30 xc5+ 1-0.

If you can bring half as much energy to your attacks they have a great chance of success.
Idea 54 – Develop Your Imagination with Studies

Although this book aims to provide you with ammunition to increase the chances of your attacks being successful, not everything can be categorized. Individual imagination still plays a big role in attacking chess. Most chess trainers agree that solving studies is not only a pleasurable exercise but it can also help the development of one’s chess imagination. Here are a couple of my favourites:

(54a) Study by Korolkov. White to play and win: 1 f7 $a6+ 2 $a3! $xa3+ 3 $b2 $a2+ 4 $c1! (obviously 4 $xa2 fails to 4...$e6+, while 4 $c3 $c2+! is also a draw) 4...$a1+ (4...$c2+ loses to 5 $d1) 5 $d2 $a2+ 6 $e3 $a3+ 7 $f4 $a4+ 8 $g5 $g4+! 9 $h6! (not 9 $f6 because White must cover the h7-square to weave his mating net, while 9 $xg4 $xf5+ 10 $xf5 $g7 is drawn) 9...$g8 10 $e7 $e6 11 fxg8 $g+ $xg8 12 $g6#. In Secrets of Spectacular Chess, Levitt writes that if you fail to find that exciting you will have no future in chess.

(54b) Composition by Konstantinopolsky. Black to play and win: 1...$e1+!! 2 $xe1 $wc2+ 3 $xc2 $d4+ 4 $b1 (4 $d1 $xb2#) 4...$c3+! 5 bxc3 $b8+ 6 $a1 $c2#. I never did come to terms with the fact that it’s White and not Black who gets mated. This example can be found in Kotov’s Play Like a Grandmaster, a more joyful book than his famous Think Like a Grandmaster.

(54c) This is not really a composition but the end of some opening analysis that I published in my book The Sämisch King’s Indian. Black wins by 1...$f6+! (the immediate 1...$f7 fails to 2 $xh7!) 2 $h6 $f7!! 3 $xf3 $g7+ 4 $g5 h6+! 5 $xh6 $f6#.
Idea 55 – Be Flexible

In modern chess it is quite rare for a player to formulate and carry out one of those multi-stage plans that the masters of yesterday were so fond of. Of course it is essential to have a plan of some sort but it is also important to retain a flexible attitude. For example, let us say that a white knight on h3 has spotted a tasty outpost on c6 that he would like to occupy. The planned route is via f2-d3-b4 but once he gets to b4 Black lashes out on the kingside with the positionally suspect ...f5. The outpost on c6 may suddenly look rather peripheral in the newly sharpened circumstances. If White now judges that the best plan is to play exf5, followed by the manoeuvre Qb4-d3-f2 to keep e4 under control, he should not hesitate in retracing his steps.

(55a) Smirin-Gallagher, London Mind Sports 1999. If this were not an article on flexibility one would be forgiven for expecting White to continue with a slow queenside build-up and Black to search for a kingside breakthrough. Smirin, who has great experience on the black side of the KID, had other ideas. He produced 18 exf5!? gxf5 19 Qh1!? Qf6 (55b) 20 Qb5 Qd7 21 Qb3! (55c). It was only now that I fully understood White’s plan. The third rank has been cleared so that, after a subsequent f4, he can swing his rook to the kingside and deliver mate. There were two reasons why White believed this audacious attempt to muscle in on Black’s territory might succeed. Firstly, having played ...h5 Black’s king has no pawn-cover. Secondly, the knight on a6, an admirable defender of the queenside, would require a powerful telescope to catch even a glimpse of the new battleground. The game continues in the next Idea.
Idea 56 – Attack Where It’s Relevant

It’s good to attack but one must attack where it hurts. In the second half of Smirin-Gallagher, London Mind Sports 1999 (continued from Idea 55 – see diagram 55c) White launched a doomed attack in an irrelevant part of the board: 21...h4 22 f4 hxg4! 23 hxg4! hxg4 24 g3 hxg3! 25 hxg3+ h8 26 f3 Wh6 27 fg1 g8 (56a). At the cost of a pawn White has achieved his objective of blasting open the kingside. I was most concerned about 28 dxg6! and, although I couldn’t see a forced win for White, some of the variations were quite terrifying, e.g.:

1) 28...wxg6? 29 dxg6!! (Smirin had missed this move) 29...h6 (56b) (after either capture on e5, 30 h3+ mates) 30 f7+! fx7 31 al+! h7 32 g7+ h6 33 c1+ f4 34 xf4+! xf4 35 1g6#. A beautiful sequence.

2) 28...dxg6 29 dxg6 hxg6 30 hxg6. During the game I hoped to get away with 30...e3 here but after 31 al h7 32 fl! White has a decisive attack – what’s that knight doing on a6? Black does have one saving move, though, 30...g8!. By returning the piece he can eliminate most of the danger to his king. After 31 al h7 32 xg8 xg8 33 dxg7 w3! Black should be able to hold the balance.

Instead Smirin opted for 28 xg8+? xg8 29 wa4 (I simply couldn’t believe his queen had deserted the kingside to pick on an irrelevant knight; it never even occurred to me to move it) 29...e4 30 xg8+ xg8 31 g1 (56c) 31...f4! 32 xa6 (White ploughs on – it is too late to repair the damage) 32...f3 33 xa7 (all the defensive tries are equally hopeless) 33...xe2 (33...h3!) 34 dxg2 g4 35 g1 f3+! 0-1.
Idea 57 – More Sacrifices in the Sicilian

We have already seen examples of $\text{Q}d5$ sacrifices in the Sicilian but there are a number of other typical sacrifices.

(57a) Matanovic-Gufeld, Skopje 1969. Black has just played 8...b5 encouraging White to sacrifice a piece – he wasn’t to be disappointed: 9 $\text{Q}xe6 fxe6$ 10 $\text{Q}xe6 \text{W}b6$? (10...$\text{W}a5$, pinning the knight, is better, with unclear play) 11 $\text{Q}d5! \text{Q}xd5$ 12 $\text{W}xd5 \text{W}e3+$ (the point of the combination is that after 12...$\text{Q}b7$ 13 $\text{Q}c7+$! and 14 $\text{W}e6+$ Black is mated) 13 $\text{W}f1 \text{Q}b6$ (57b) 14 $\text{Q}c7+ \text{Q}d7$ 15 $\text{W}f7+ \text{Q}c6$ 16 $\text{Q}d5! \text{W}xe4$ 17 $\text{Q}c7+$ $\text{Q}xd5$ 18 $\text{Q}d1+$ $\text{Q}e6$ 19 $\text{Q}e1 \text{W}xe1+$ 20 $\text{Q}xe1$ h6 (20...$\text{Q}d5$ 21 $\text{Q}c6$ $\text{Q}b8$ 22 $\text{Q}f2$ wins) 21 $\text{f}5+$! $\text{Q}d5$ (21...$\text{Q}xf5$ 22 $\text{W}f7+$) 22 $\text{W}xb6$ hxg5 23 $\text{Q}f2$ $\text{Q}h4$ 24 $\text{Q}d1+$ $\text{Q}e5$ 25 $\text{W}c6$ $\text{Q}b8$ 26 $\text{W}e8+$ 1-0. The consequences of these $\text{Q}xe6$ sacrifices with the black king in the centre are often very unclear. In practice Black tends to allow them unless he has already played ...$\text{Q}e7$ as then White can pick up an additional pawn with $\text{Q}xg7+$.

(57c) 12 $\text{Q}xb5! \text{axb5}$ 13 $\text{Q}xb5 \text{W}b8$ 14 $\text{Q}xd6+ \text{Q}xd6$ 15 $\text{W}xd6 \text{W}xd6$ 16 $\text{Q}xd6$. There are quite a few similar sacrifices in the Sicilian where White gets three connected passed pawns on the queenside in return for his piece. They usually work out in his favour though in practice White remains strangely reluctant to part with the piece (about 50% played 12 $\text{Q}d3$ in the diagram position). After 16 $\text{Q}xd6$ Rechel-Lanka, Bundesliga 1994/5 continued 16...$\text{Q}a5$ 17 $\text{Q}d4$ $\text{Q}c8$ 18 e5 $\text{Q}d5$ 19 $\text{Q}xd5$ exd5 20 $\text{Q}xd5$ $\text{Q}f5$ 21 $\text{Q}c5!$ 0-0 22 g4 $\text{Q}e4$ 23 $\text{Q}e1$ $\text{Q}b7$ 24 $\text{Q}xc8$ $\text{Q}xc8$ and now 25 $\text{Q}e2$ would have left Black in a hopeless position.
Idea 58 – Three Pieces vs Queen

In Idea 70 we can see how a rook increases in strength against two pieces as the game progresses. The difference is just as marked with three pieces against a queen. In the opening or early middlegame it is normally a considerable advantage to have three pieces against a queen, e.g.:

(58a) Gallagher-Datu, Elista OL 1998. White is threatening to win a second pawn with 20 Bxc4. Black now carried out his planned combination but misassessed the resulting position: 19...Bxb2 20 Bxb2 a4 21 Bxa4! Bxb2 22 Bxb2 c3 23 Bc4 (58b). Black had assumed that the c-pawn would cause disruption in the white camp but with the knights cooperating beautifully, the black queen is locked out of the game. Black tried 23...Bc7 24 Bc1 f6 25 e3 Bxb5 26 Bxb5 Wxc4 27 Bxc3 but White eventually won with his material advantage.

In the ending, though, it is a different story and the queen is usually not inferior to the minor pieces. The queen can stretch the minor pieces by switching play from one wing to another and it is also better at punishing exposed kings. It is not uncommon for these endings to end in a draw, either by perpetual check or because the minor pieces are solid but have no chances of active play.

(58c) Ashley-Kacheishvili, Manhattan 1999 shows the queen triumphing against uncoordinated pieces: 29 Wxa1! Bb4 30 Wa4 Bc6 31 Wb5! f8 32 Wxd5 (White’s mobile centre gives him a clear advantage) 32...Bb4 33 Wxa5 a6 34 e4 Bd7 35 Wb6 Bb5+ 36 g1 Bd3 37 f3 Bc2 38 Wxb7 Bxb3 39 Wa8 a4 40 g4 Bb5 41 d5 Bd3 42 d6 f4 43 g3 Be6 44 f4 Bc5 45 e5 Bd7 46 Wd5 Be2 47 e6 Bf6 48 exf7+ Bh8 49 d7 1-0.
Idea 59 – Pawn-Storm Chat

One tends to imagine pawn-storms taking place on the opposite wing to where one has castled, but this is not always the case. The best-known example is the King’s Indian, where Black castles kingside and his favoured plan in many lines is the kingside pawn-storm. Diagram 59a shows a typical position.

There are also several variations in the Sicilian where White flings the pawns in front of his king down the board. In diagram 59b, Gallagher-Efimov, Mendrisio 1998, it would be almost foolhardy for White to castle queenside, where he has much less protection for his king and where Black’s pieces are well-placed to attack. No, the correct move is 15 0-0!, when the white king will be in no immediate danger and White will still be able to continue his kingside attack. Note that he can make preparations for this attack even before Black has castled as the black king is not going anywhere else.

Diagram 59c is a typical position from the Averbakh variation of the King’s Indian. It looks as if White has started a mating attack on the kingside but it has been well established that such mating attacks rarely pay off for White in the King’s Indian. In fact White is really angling to exchange queens and gradually take over the initiative on the queenside. He achieves this with 15 ðc6d1!, when Black has nothing better than to accept the slightly worse position that arises after the queen exchange. White’s kingside advance is not just bluff. It serves to gain useful space in this sector of the board and makes it difficult for Black to achieve counterplay with the traditional ...f5.
**Idea 60 – The Exchange Sacrifice: Petrosian style**

The old masters, on the whole, would only sacrifice the exchange when it brought them immediate gain such as a mating attack. This changed when the Soviet School took control of world chess and brought with them a new understanding of chess dynamics. The hero of the ‘positional’ exchange sacrifice was Tigran Petrosian. In countless games he would be grovelling around on the back ranks only for an inspired exchange sacrifice to relieve the pressure on his position and change the complexion of the game.

(60a) Reshevsky-Petrosian, Zurich Ct 1953 is a famous example. White’s kingside attacking chances were worrying Petrosian and he desperately wanted to transfer his knight from c6 to d5 but it all looked too slow. Suddenly, the solution struck him. 25...\texttt{e6}! (this clears the e7-square for the knight while White is prevented from advancing e6) 26 \texttt{a4} (I'm not sure if this helps White) 26...	exttt{e7} 27 \texttt{x}e6 \texttt{f}xe6 (Black’s light-square control is worth an exchange) 28 \texttt{f}f1 (Reshevsky is already preparing the counter-sacrifice) 28...	exttt{d}d5 29 \texttt{f}f3 \texttt{d}d3 (60b) 30 \texttt{x}d3! \texttt{c}xd3 31 \texttt{x}d3 \texttt{b}4! 32 \texttt{cxb}4 (32 \texttt{c}4 \texttt{b}6 is very risky for White as he drops the a-pawn) 32...	exttt{a}xb4 and now Black’s superior minor piece makes up for the pawn.

(60c) Spassky-Petrosian, Moscow Wch (11) 1969: 30...	exttt{c}4! 31 \texttt{d}3 (Spassky tolerates the rook in his camp as long as he can, as capturing it would be a positional disaster) 31...	exttt{e}8 32 \texttt{f}3 \texttt{b}4 33 \texttt{a}3 \texttt{xa}3 34 \texttt{xa}3 \texttt{d}6 35 \texttt{e}1 \texttt{f}5 36 \texttt{a}a1 \texttt{e}4+ 37 \texttt{x}e4 \texttt{f}xe4 38 \texttt{b}1 \texttt{d}7 39 \texttt{a}2 \texttt{e}8 40 \texttt{x}c4 \texttt{dxc}4 41 \texttt{d}5 (rooks need open files) 41...	exttt{x}d5 42 \texttt{d}1 \texttt{c}3 43 \texttt{c}2 \texttt{h}3! 44 \texttt{g}1 \texttt{g}4 with a decisive advantage for Black.
Idea 61 – Ivanchuk

Ukrainian grandmaster Vasily Ivanchuk has been one of the stars of the 1990s. Though he is immensely strong, one is never quite sure what he is going to produce on any given day – brilliant masterpiece, elementary blunder or unexpected resignation. Here is one of his masterpieces: Topalov-Ivanchuk, Linares 1999. 1 d4 c5 2 e4 cxd4 3 exd4 d6 4 cxd4 e5 5 g3 b4+ 6 c3 a5 7 b5 d5! (61a) 8 a3 xcx3+ 9 bxc3 (Ivanchuk relates that Topalov spent a lot of time on this recapture but still chose the wrong way; better is 9 xc3, to meet 9...d4 with 10 b4! xb4 11 axb4 wa5 12 b5 with play for the exchange) 9...d6 10 g2 0-0 11 b3 (Topalov must have felt nervous playing such a move but the threat of 11...dxc4 must be dealt with, and lines such as 11 cxd5 cxd5 12 xd5 exd5 13 xd5 h3 are equally unpalatable) 11...dxc4 12 xc4 e5! 13 d6 e6 14 wd3 (61b) 14...e4!! (Ivanchuk realizes that if he can just get his queen’s rook into the game with tempo he will be able to launch a decisive attack) 15 xe4 xe4 16 xe4 ed8 17 c2 d4! 18 wb2 (61c) 18...xe2!! (no castling today; 18...c4 19 wb4 is not too bad for White) 19 xe2 (Ivanchuk had also taken the possibility of 19 wb4 into account – that is refuted by 19...xc3!) 19...fe8!! (the calm after the storm – the white king will now be ripped to shreds on the central files and light squares) 20 wb4 (Ivanchuk also examines other defensive tries: 20 f3 f5!; 20 e3 c4+ 21 f3 xe4! 22 xe4 wd5+ 23 f4 h5! leads to mate, while Ivanchuk also gives 20 e1 wh5+! 21 f1 h3+ 22 gl xe4) 20...wh5+ 21 f3 f5! 22 g4 wh3! 23 gxf5 xf5! 24 c4+ h8 25 e1 xe4+! 0-1.

61a: after 7...d5!

61b: after 14 wd3

61c: after 18 wb2
Idea 62 – Destructive Knights

(62a) Gallagher-Jansa, Royan 1989. The special properties of the knight lend themselves to surprising moves. In this game White sacrificed a knight four times, and four times the offer was declined. None of the sacrifices was very deep but each helped to improve White’s position. The fun started with 15 \textit{Qxf5?!} \textit{Qbc4} (after 15...exf5 16 \textit{Qxb6} \textit{Wxb6} 17 \textit{Qxd5} White regains the piece with interest) 16 \textit{Qxe7+} \textit{Wxe7} 17 \textit{Qxc4} \textit{Qxc4} 18 \textit{Wd4} (White has gained from these exchanges as he is planning an attack on the dark squares; if now 18...\textit{Wb4} then 19 \textit{Qe2} and everything is under control) 18...\textit{f6} 19 \textit{h6} fxe5 20 fxe5 g6?! 21 \textit{Qe4!} b6 (21...\textit{Qxe3} 22 \textit{Qf6+!}) 22 \textit{Qf6+} \textit{Qh8} 23 b3 \textit{Qxe3} 24 \textit{Wxe3} (with a powerful knight against a bad bishop, White has a clear positional advantage) 24...b5 25 \textit{Qhf1} \textit{Qb7} 26 \textit{Wb6} \textit{Qac8} 27 \textit{Wd6!} \textit{Wxd6} 28 exd6 \textit{Ecd8} (62b) 29 \textit{Qd7!} (forcing an exchange of rooks to weaken Black’s back rank) 29...\textit{Qxf1} 30 \textit{Qxf1} \textit{Qg8} 31 \textit{Qf6+} \textit{Qh8} 32 g5 e5 33 \textit{Qd7!} (number 4) 33...\textit{Qg8} 34 \textit{Qxe5} \textit{Qxd6} 35 \textit{Qf7} \textit{Qe6} 36 \textit{Qg7+} 1-0.

Diagram 62c features the old main line position in the Kieseritzky Gambit. White is struggling here, e.g. D.Holmes-Hebden, British Ch (Plymouth) 1989: 13 \textit{Ee1} \textit{We6!} 14 a3 \textit{Wa2} 15 \textit{Wd1} h5 16 g3 \textit{Qg7} 17 \textit{Qh2} \textit{Qxc3!} 18 bxc3 \textit{Wxa3+} 19 \textit{Qc2} \textit{Qxd4!} 20 \textit{Wa1} \textit{Qb4+!} 0-1. Obviously unsatisfactory for the prospective King’s Gambiteer. For a while I thought I had patched this line up with 13 \textit{d5}, but no. A devastating double-act from the black knights decides the issue: 13...\textit{Qxc3!} 14 \textit{Wxe7} \textit{Qxa2+} 15 \textit{Qb1} \textit{Qxe7!} 16 \textit{Qxa2} \textit{Qxd5} and amazingly White must lose back his extra piece, leaving him three pawns down.
Idea 63 – Clogging up Black’s Development with e5-e6

The pawn sacrifice e5-e6 can have a disruptive effect on Black’s development and seriously undermine his king’s safety. The sacrifice is at its most dangerous early in the game before Black has mobilized.

Hodgson-David, French League 1999: 1 d4 g6 2 e4 g7 3 c3 a6 4 f4 b5 5 c3 d6 6 d3 d7 7 e5 c5 (63a). This was not the first time this position had been reached but the first time 8 e6! was ventured. Knowing Hodgson I would be amazed if he even looked at another move. 8...fxe6 9 g5 d6 (I suspect 9...f8 10 dxc5 b7 (10...dxc5 11 f7?) is the best Black can do, though Fritz believes Black can get away with 9...xd4 10 xe6 {10 f7?} 10...xc3+ 11 xc3 1a5 (after 10...f8 Black is worse but far from finished) 11 xh7! (63b) 1-0. xh7 sacrifices are a recurring theme in this type of position. This one is particularly devastating as 11...xh7 12 xg6+ costs Black his queen. It was possible to play on, albeit a pawn down with a bad position after 11...d6 12 xg6+ d8.

1 e4 f6 2 e5 d5 3 d4 d6 4 c3 c6 5 c4 b6 is a variation of the Alekhine that has gone out of fashion because of the reply 6 e6! (63c). After 6...fxe6 (6...xe6? 7 d5) the sharp 7 g5 is quite dangerous for Black, but NCO considers that White can gain the upper hand in quieter fashion: 7 e3 (prophylaxis against ...e5) 7...e5 (Black plays it anyway, hoping to gain some freedom by returning the pawn; 7...g6 8 h4! is likely to lead to the disintegration of his kingside) 8 d5 d4 9 xxd4 exd4 10 xxd4 e5 11 dxe6 xxe6 12 d3 with a pleasant game for White.
Idea 64 – Two Pieces Can be Worth a Queen

A queen is generally thought to be worth a touch more than rook, minor piece and pawn, so one would expect it to win relatively easily against two minor pieces, but this is not always the case. In fact there is a whole body of sacrifices based on giving up the queen for a couple of minor pieces, with the proviso that one also gains control of a colour complex. An extra pawn or two thrown in also helps, and the sacrificer has more chance of success if he has a solid base. GM Jon Speelman is one of the modern-day heroes of such sacrifices so we shall take an example from his play.

(64a) Speelman-Martin, British Ch 1982. This is the position where the sacrifice was conceived. White chose 15 d4!? cxd4 16 exd4 exd4 17 g4! g4 18 e5 g4+ 19 h1 g4 20 xd4 (64b). I wouldn’t like to assess this position but, given the choice, I would always take White. His minor pieces all have excellent prospects and there are glaring weaknesses around the black king. He is also about to obtain a powerful passed pawn while Black is trying to patch up his kingside. 20...g6 (20...g4 21 e4 f5 22 xd6 leaves the black king too exposed) 21 c5 g8 22 d5 f6?! (22...e6 is better) 23 g3 b5 24 cxd6 e2 25 c3 g5 26 e4 g6 27 e2 g8 28 g5 a3 29 b4 a4 30 a1 b5 31 d1 e2 32 gxf6+ h8 33 e1 c4 34 a1 a2 35 g1 c4 36 f3!? (64c) (Speelman finds an elegant human way to finish; a computer would prefer 36 d5 followed by g8+) 36...b3 37 g2 c4 38 e4+ h7 39 xg5+ hgx5 40 h1+ (the point of f3 and g2 is revealed) 40...g8 41 xg6+ f7 42 g7+ 1-0.
Idea 65 – The Fantasy Variation

I have a soft spot for the Fantasy Variation (FV) against the Caro-Kann, an underrated line simply drenched in attacking possibilities. Maybe one day I’ll write a book on it, but here are a few ideas to keep you going:

After 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 f3 (65a) there is:

1) 3...dxe4 4 fxe4 e5 5 dxe5 and now:

1a) 5...exd4?! is bad but frequently seen. 6 c4! b4+? (6...e6 7 dxe6 fxe6 8 0-0 with g5 on the cards is unpleasant for Black; I doubt he can do better than 6...e7 7 0-0 d6 8 e4 9 0-0 0-0 10 e5, when Black will end up with not quite enough for the exchange) 7 c3! c3 8 dxf7+! dxf7 (8...e7 9 d8! ++) 9 d8xd8 cxd2+ 10 d2 bxal d (65b) 11 d5+! c6 12 b8+ h6 13 dxe6+ g5 14 dxe5#. I have won this game three times, with two more opponents playing 8...e7.

1b) 5...e6 is considered to equalize by most sources, though not NCO as the section on the Caro-Kann was written by me! 6 c3! d7 (6...f6 7 dxe5 dxe4 8 dxe3 is pleasant for White) 7 d3 d6 8 0-0 d6 9 b1 0-0 10 e3 (65c) is a good way for White to get his pieces out and support his centre.

2) 3...g6 4 d3 (4 e5!? has been played by Hodgson, while Michael Adams, a recent convert to 3 f3, played 4 c3 against Seirawan) 4...g7 5 d3 dxe4?! (5...b6 is best, when 6 dxe2xb2 7 exd5 leads to unclear positions) 6 dxe4 h6 7 f3 g4 8 g5 h5 9 h4 e3 10 d2 xf1 11 xf1 (that was an awful lot of time spent exchanging off an unmoved piece – Black is now seriously lagging in development) 11...e6 12 0-0-0 a5 13 d5! g4 14 f4 h5 15 e5! h6 16 g5 xg5 17 xg5 xd1 (65d) 18 d6! (18 xxf7 is the obvious move but the consequences of 18...c5 19 xg6 h8 are not
101 Attacking Ideas in Chess

3) A few years back I was delighted to see a survey in *New in Chess* promoting 3...e5 as the refutation of the FV, especially as after 4 dxe5 !c5 they didn’t consider the best move, 5 !d3!, when in my opinion Black has very little for the pawn. 5...!b6 6 !a4 !a5+ (6...!f2+ 7 !e2 doesn’t help) 7 c3 (65e) and now:

3a) 7...!xg1 8 !xg1 dxe4 9 !f4! !e7 10 fxe4 0-0 11 !d4 !d5 12 !xd4 !xd4 13 !c5 !g6 14 !g3 b6 15 !b3 !d7 16 0-0-0 !e8 17 e6! ? !xe6 18 !d4 with advantage to White, Gallagher-Anić, Lyons 1993.

3b) 7...!e7 8 exd5 b5 9 d6 !b4+ 10 g3 bxa4 11 gxh4 !xe5+ 12 !e2 ±.

3c) 7...!f8 8 b4 !c7 9 exd5 !xe5+ 10 !e2 !xe2+ 11 !xe2 !f6 12 dxc6 !xc6 13 b5! !a5 14 !d4 !d5 15 !b3! !b6 16 !b2 !e8 17 e6? !xe6 18 !d4 with advantage to White, Gallagher-Tukmakov, Geneva 1994.

4) 3...e6 is the most solid and popular reply to the FV. 4 !c3 (4 !e3!?) 4...!b4 (4...!f6 5 e5 !fd7 6 f4 c5 is the Steinitz Variation of the Classical French) and now (65f):

4a) 5 !e3 is a slightly dubious move; after 5...dxe4 6 a3 !xc3+ 7 bxc3 !a5 I prefer Black.

4b) 5 !f4 has brought White success after 5...!f6 6 !d3 b6 7 !ge2 !a6 8 !e3 but recently 5...!e7 has been introduced, when the bishop looks misplaced on f4.

4c) 5 !d2!? is the latest try. Black can win a pawn with 5...!xc3 6 !xc3 dxe4 but this is not going to be to everyone’s taste. 7 !e2 is now the most accurate, in order to clarify matters in the centre. Black is more likely to play 5...!f6 or 5...!e7 with a tense struggle ahead.
Idea 66 – A Knight is Superb Protection for an Exposed King

An appreciation of how good a knight is at defending the king may give you the necessary confidence to undertake a risky-looking escapade that normally you would not even contemplate. Before examining a painful practical example, diagram 66a shows a set-up everyone should be familiar with – remarkably, the white queen has no checks.

(66b) Z.Rahman-Gallagher, British Ch (Scarborough) 1999 (after 24...\texttt{Qe}b8). Black has just casually offered his crucial c-pawn in the belief that the attack would be strong enough. 25 \texttt{Wxc7}! \texttt{Qb1} 26 \texttt{Qe}3!!. I had been side-tracked by the variation 26 \texttt{Wxb8+? Qxb8} 27 \texttt{c}7 \texttt{Qf}8 28 \texttt{c}8\texttt{W Qxc8} 29 \texttt{Qe}7+ \texttt{Qh}7 30 \texttt{Qxc8 Qh}3! 31 \texttt{Cc1 Qf}6!, when White has serious problems. The text-move had vaguely crossed my mind but I had decided not too look at such rubbish. After 26...\texttt{Wxf3+ 27 Qg1} (66c) it slowly began to dawn on me that there was not even a saving resource, let alone the knockout blow I had been expecting to deliver. The truth is that the white knight heroically defends key squares around the white king while Black’s minor piece is hardly even a spectator, participating neither in the attack nor in the efforts to stop the white c-pawn. 27...\texttt{Qxb2} (27...\texttt{Qh7} is a better try, though White is still on top after 28 \texttt{Wd7!}) 28 \texttt{Wd8+ Qh7} 29 \texttt{Qdd1! Qf}6 (after 29...\texttt{Qxd1} 30 \texttt{Wxd1} the c-pawn decides the game) 30 \texttt{c}7 \texttt{Qxd8} 31 \texttt{cxd8W Wxe4?} (Andy Martin points out in the tournament bulletin that I was too demoralized to make a fight out of it with 31...\texttt{Qxd1} 32 \texttt{Wxd1 Wxe4}) 32 \texttt{Wf6 Wb7} 33 \texttt{Qd8 Qxf1+ 34 Qxf1} 1-0.

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{66a.png}
\caption{White has no checks}
\end{figure}

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{66b.png}
\caption{after 24...\texttt{Qeb8}}
\end{figure}

\begin{figure}
\centering
\includegraphics[width=0.5\textwidth]{66c.png}
\caption{after 27 \texttt{Qg1}}
\end{figure}
Idea 67 – One Idea Leads to Another

It quite often happens that all the ingredients for a combination are present but nothing quite works. Go back to the beginning and see if you can approach the combination from a different angle. Sometimes small changes make all the difference (see also Idea 80).

(67a) Anand-Lautier, Biel 1997. Once you have tuned into the incredibly complex diagram position, you will observe that White is a pawn down but if he can pick up the cornered bishop, in return for just an exchange, he will stand well. At least that was the scenario until Black’s previous move, 19...\texttt{a8-d8}, which has boxed in his own king and put the Anand combination scanner on red alert. It produced 20 h6!. Anand relates how at first he concentrated on the immediate 20 \texttt{g6} but the black king always escaped – the text strengthens the combination by allowing the possibility of \texttt{g7+} or \texttt{h6+} at key moments. 20...\texttt{gxh6}? (20...\texttt{g6} 21 \texttt{xg6}!! \texttt{xd1} 22 \texttt{xg6}+ \texttt{f8} 23 \texttt{xf7+} \texttt{g8} 24 \texttt{g7+} \texttt{f8} 25 \texttt{a3+} with mate to follow is one beautiful variation; Anand gives 20...\texttt{xe3} as the only move that doesn’t lose at once, though 21 \texttt{xe3} \texttt{e5} 22 \texttt{hxg7} \texttt{g8} 23 \texttt{c1!} is very good for White) 21 \texttt{g6}!! (I was playing in the B-tournament a few yards away and I can assure you that this move created quite a stir in the tournament hall) 21...\texttt{e7} (21...\texttt{xd1} 22 \texttt{xe6}+ \texttt{f8} 23 \texttt{xf7+} \texttt{g8} 24 \texttt{xf7#} (67b) is the delightful main line) 22 \texttt{xd4} \texttt{xd4} 23 \texttt{d3}! (White keeps it simple as Black’s bishop on g2 is doomed) 23...\texttt{d8} 24 \texttt{xd8+} \texttt{xd8} 25 \texttt{d3}! (67c) 1-0. In view of 25...\texttt{h1} 26 \texttt{b2} followed by \texttt{f6}.

\texttt{W}

67a: after 19...\texttt{d8}

\texttt{B}

67b: after 24 \texttt{xf7#}

\texttt{B}

67c: after 25 \texttt{d3}!
Idea 68 – Mutual Pawn-Storms in Action

(68a) Sax-Gallagher, Mitropa Cup (Baden) 1999. 10...b5 11 g4 b4 12 ∆d5 ∆xd5 13 exd5 a5 14 ∆b1 ∆c7!? 15 g5 ∆fd7 16 h4 ∆b6 17 h5 a4 18 ∆c1 ∆c4 19 ∆xc4 ∆xc4 20 g6! ∆d7 21 gxh7+ (21 h6 fxg6! 22 hxg7 ∆f7 is fine for Black) 21...∆h8?! (using the white h-pawn as a shield is a risky business as Black is denied use of g8 and there are many tactical possibilities based on this square; 21...∆xh7 is more accurate) 22 ∆hg1 b3 (no time to hang around) 23 axb3? (an incredibly reckless move opening the a-file for Black; afterwards we concluded that 23 cxb3 axb3 24 ∆g4!, gaining a tempo for doubling on the g-file, gave White such a strong attack that Black has nothing better than 24...∆c2+ with some play for the pawn in the ending but, perhaps, not quite enough) 23...axb3 24 ∆xb3 ∆a4! 25 ∆g2 ∆f6 26 ∆g5 (68b) (the black kingside is about to cave in and 26...∆a2+ 27 ∆c1 leads nowhere; yet, Black is winning...) 26...∆c5! 27 ∆xf6 ∆a2+! 28 ∆c1 ∆xb3+ 29 cxb3 ∆c8+ 30 ∆d2 ∆a5+! 31 ∆e3 ∆b6+! 32 ∆e2 (32 ∆e4 ∆b4+ 33 ∆e3 ∆f4+ also catches the king) 32...∆c2+ 33 ∆d2 ∆xd2+! 34 ∆xd2 ∆d4+ 0-1. In view of 35 ∆e2 ∆xb2+ 36 ∆e3 ∆d4+ 37 ∆e2 ∆a2+ and 35 ∆c2 ∆c8+ 36 ∆b1 ∆d3+! 37 ∆a2 ∆a8#.  

(68c) W.Watson-Kuczynski, Bundesliga 1994/5. The attacks appear to be landing simultaneously. Play continued 20 ∆xh7+ ∆xh7 21 g6+ ∆g8 22 h6 axb3 23 hxg7 ∆xg1+!! (an incredible defence to divert the rook from the h-file) 24 ∆xg1 bxa2 (this is an important theme in many pawn-storms – the a-pawn can’t be stopped) 25 gxf7+ ∆xf7 26 ∆g2 a1∆+ 27 ∆d2 ∆xg1! (again) 28 gxf8∆+ ∆xf8 29 ∆xg1 ∆a5 and Black had emerged with a winning position.
Idea 69 – He Who Dares Wins

In my experience the more belligerent one’s mood the better one’s results. I am not advocating reckless chess but if the opportunity arises for a reasonable sacrifice then it should be taken. It is easier to attack in chess than defend. Here are a couple of examples from the World no. 2:

(69a) Anand-Gelfand, Wijk aan Zee 1996. 17 $\text{xg5}!$? (“I didn’t think much about this sacrifice ... I just checked that Black had no obvious defence and played it” – Anand) 17...hxg5 18 $\text{dxg5} \text{g6}$ (to prevent $\text{h4}$) 19 $\text{ae1}$! (obviously the queen’s rook is required to participate in the attack) 19...$\text{e7}$ 20 $\text{f5}!!$ (a splendid move with the simple idea of defending the knight in order to play $\text{h3}$) 20...$\text{f6}$ 21 $\text{xe6}$? (Black cracks under White’s pressure; after 21...$\text{e8}$! White has nothing better than 22 $\text{e4}$! $\text{xe6}$ 23 $\text{xe6}$ $\text{fxe6}$ 24 $\text{exe6}$+$\text{g7}$, which Anand considers to be about equal after both 25 $\text{f3}$ and 25 $\text{h5}$ $\text{f6}$ 26 $\text{xf6}$ $\text{xf6}$ 27 $\text{xc5}$) 22 $\text{xe6}$! $\text{g7}$ (22...$\text{xe6}$ 23 $\text{exe6}$+$\text{g7}$ 24 $\text{exe6}$+$\text{h8}$ 25 $\text{h5}$+) 23 $\text{xe7}$+$\text{xe7}$ 24 $\text{xf8}$+$\text{xf8}$ 25 $\text{h4}$! 1-0. 25...$\text{h7}$ 26 $\text{h5}$ $\text{e7}$ 27 $\text{f3}$ $\text{f5}$ 28 $\text{xb7}$ is completely hopeless.

(69b) Anand-Karpov, Las Palmas 1996. 21 $\text{xe7}$+! (White could take a pawn with 21 $\text{xd5}$ but Anand was in no mood for a long game; when he saw the text-move he was too excited to analyse, so he just played it) 21...$\text{xe7}$ 22 $\text{h5}$+$\text{g8}$ 23 $\text{h3}!$ $\text{xe5}$? (the critical 23...$\text{f6}$! is analysed in great depth by Anand in Vishy Anand: My Best Games of Chess; he concludes White is better after 24 $\text{h3}$!) 24 $\text{h3}$! $\text{f6}$ 25 $\text{dx5} \text{we7}$ 26 $\text{h7}$+$\text{f7}$ 27 $\text{e3} \text{e8}$ 28 $\text{g7} \text{f6}$ 29 $\text{xf6}$ $\text{c6}$ 30 $\text{al}$ $\text{d8}$ 31 $\text{h4} \text{b7}$ 32 $\text{c1} \text{a6}$ 33 $\text{a1} \text{b7}$ 34 $\text{d1} \text{a6}$ 35 $\text{wb1}$! $\text{xf6}$ 36 $\text{g5}$ 1-0.
Idea 70 – A Rook Can Defeat Minor Pieces

In the middlegame it is unclear how many extra pawns a rook needs to be worth two minor pieces - each position has to be judged on its merits. As the board begins to empty, though, the power of the rook increases. In the endgame it is unusual for a rook + two pawns not to be superior to two minor pieces while rook + one pawn can also be good enough. The bishop-pair is usually the best combination to fight the rook, and if all the pawns are on one side the long-range rook loses some of its effectiveness.

(70a) Hübner-Karpov, Tilburg 1977. 22...h6! 23 e3 xe3! 24 fxe3 xe3+ 25 f3 xf1 26 xf1 (minor pieces generally have a better chance if they still have a rook to accompany them, but here 26 xf1 loses to 26...c2) 26...xc1 27 xc1 c8 28 b2 c2 29 xf6 a2 30 e3 xa3 31 d2 b5 32 e4 b4 33 d4 a5 34 c4 a2 35 h4 c6 36 d4 e2 37 e5 e1! 38 f6 b1 39 e7 e5 40 g4 c1+ 41 b3 d5 and with the black king penetrating, White could not resist for much longer.

(70b) Smirin-Webster, London Mind Sports 1999. 50 g4! (White is going after the h-pawn - it is essential to create threats on the kingside while Black is dealing with the a-pawn) 50...f5 (to increase the scope of his bishop and maximize his chances of stopping a kingside passed pawn) 51 h8 xe4 52 xh7+ c6 53 xe4 b5 54 e7 xa5 55 xe5 b5 56 g3 xe4 57 f4 (70c) 57...d3?? (on 57...c2 White’s plan would be to sacrifice rook for bishop and g-pawn and defeat the knight with his pawns and active king; deep analysis is required to determine the outcome) 58 e3! (otherwise 59 d4 wins a piece) 59 xe5+ xe5 60 xd3 with a winning king and pawn ending.
Idea 71 – Get Them Bishops Working

Everyone knows that it’s favourable to have the bishop-pair in open positions, but it is generally thought that knights are better in closed positions. This is not always true, as closed positions do not always stay closed, especially if one is willing to invest a little material to open them up. Here is one of my favourite examples:

Hodgson-Psakhis, Metz 1994: 1 c4 e5 2 ∆c3 ∆b4 3 g3 ∆xc3 4 bxc3 d6 5 g2 f5?! (71a) (5...∆e7 is more solid; after the text-move, White’s light-squared bishop has more scope but look at how Hodgson brings his dark-squared bishop to life) 6 c5! dxc5 (Black didn’t like 6...d5 7 ∆b3 c6 8 d4 e4 9 ∆f4, while after 6...∆c6 7 cxd6 cxd6 there is a target for the dark-squared bishop to latch onto on d6, though this line was perhaps the lesser evil for Black) 7 a3 ∆d6 8 d4! exd4 9 cxd4 ∆xd4 10 ∆c1! (71b) (White has two incredibly powerful bishops but also a lead in development to compensate for his two pawns) 10...f6 11 ∆h3! ∆d7 12 0-0 ∆e7 13 ∆b2 f7 14 e4?! (now the rooks get their open lines but 14 ∆e3! is strong according to Hodgson) 14...0-0 15 ∆g5 ∆g6 16 exf5 ∆xf5 17 ∆e1 ∆d5 18 h4! ∆b6 19 ∆xc5 c6 20 ∆e4?! (20 h5! would have been a neat tactical shot as the queen must stay defending e8; after the compulsory 20...∆xh5 21 g4! White wins material and can deal with Black’s tricks) 20...h6? (after 20...∆a4 21 ∆c2 ∆xb2 22 ∆xb2 h6 23 ∆xf5 ∆xf5 White is better but Black has some chances on the light squares) 21 ∆f3 ∆a4 22 ∆c2 ∆xb2 (71c) 23 ∆d4! (now White gets to keep his bishop) 23...∆e7 24 ∆xf5 ∆xf5 25 ∆xb2 f7 26 c2! c5 27 ∆b5 ∆e6 28 ∆xc5 ∆c8 29 ∆xc8+! 1-0. 29...∆xc8 30 ∆b3.
Idea 72 – Swinging Rooks

Rooks adore open files but they are also not impartial to open ranks. Countless attacks have received decisive extra weight by the timely arrival of a swinging rook in the battle area. The third rank is their favourite avenue – #e1-e3, #d1-d3 and #a1-a3 (or the black equivalent though Black is more likely to have pawns on the third rank blocking the way) followed by a right turn are the most common manoeuvres. I particularly enjoyed the following move:

(72a) Hodgson-Milosević, Neuchâtel 1993. 14 #a1! (to find such a move the concept of swinging rooks must be firmly ingrained and even then it is by no means obvious; White could have launched an attack at once but in a blocked position where Black has no counterplay, why not invite everyone to the party?) 14 ... #e6 15 #a3 #c7 16 #c2 #e8 17 #f5 #xf5 18 exf5 #b6 19 g4 #f6 (72b) 20 g5 fxg5 21 f6! #xf6 22 #xh7+ #xh7 23 hxg5+ 1-0. Black is mated in a few moves. Although the queen’s rook played only a marginal role in the elegant finish, its lurking presence on a3 must have been terribly intimidating for Black.

(72c) Hodgson-Emms, London Lloyds Bank 1992. Occasionally rooks swing the other way. Here Black is a pawn up but has just played 11...c4, seeking to extricate his bishop from a sticky situation. He would have taken 12 #c1 into account (12...c3 13 #xc2 cxd2+ 14 #xd2 is worse for him but he has exchanged off his problem bishop) but he might easily have missed White’s reply, 12 #h3!. Now there is no time for 12...cxb3 13 axb3 #h6 as 14 e4! cuts off the bishop’s retreat. Therefore Black continued 12...#h6 but after 13 #c3 #h7 14 #xc4 #d7 15 #ac1 #d8 16 e4 White held a considerable advantage.
Idea 73 – Zwischenzug

This chess term is German for ‘in-between move’ and refers to situations where the apparently forced move is delayed in favour of a more forcing alternative. Before making even the most obvious recapture, it is worth spending a few seconds to make sure it really is the only possibility. The higher up the chess ladder one goes, the more zwischenzugs one finds.

(73a) I. Sokolov-Adams, Dortmund 1999.
13 $\text{Bxf6} \text{c8}$! (on 13...gxf6 White develops with tempo by 14 $\text{c4}$!) 14 $\text{b4}$gxf6 15 $\text{b5} \text{c2}$ 16 $\text{d1} \text{c6}$! (moving the queen would have allowed 17 $\text{d8}$+) 17 $\text{g4}$+ $\text{g5}$ 18 $\text{xd6}$ $\text{c5}$ 19 $\text{d6}$ $\text{b8}$ 20 $\text{xb7}$ $\text{b7}$ 21 $\text{d2}$ $\text{c1}$+ 22 $\text{d1}$ $\text{c2}$ 23 $\text{d2}$

(73b) Topalov-I. Sokolov, Dortmund 1999.
34 $\text{e7}$! (34 $\text{xa6}$ loses control of the position) 34...$\text{c7}$ 35 $\text{f5}$!? (35 $\text{xg6}$+ hxg6 36 $\text{xa6}$ is also good; the text-move exploits Black’s weak back rank as 35...$\text{xf5}$ is now answered by 36 $\text{xd6}$! and 35...$\text{xf5}$ by 36
$\text{xc7}$!) 35...$\text{bxc5}$ 36 $\text{d6}$ $\text{e7}$ (36...f6 37 $\text{bxc5}$ $\text{xc5}$ 38 $\text{b7}$ $\text{c7}$ 39 $\text{b4}$! wins) 37 $\text{xe7}$ $\text{xe7}$ 38 $\text{bxc5}$ and White soon won.

And now one which went horribly wrong (see also page 49):

(73c) Timman-Kramnik, Dortmund 1999.
White, under some pressure, played 25 $\text{b3}$, having calculated that after 25...dxe4 26 $\text{a5}$, 26...$\text{xa5}$ 27 $\text{xax5} \text{d5}$ 28 dxe4 would lead to the b5-pawn dropping, resulting in a drawish ending. Kramnik neatly side-stepped with 26...$\text{d6}$!, when instead of collapsing with 27 dxe4?? $\text{a8}$ 28 $\text{d1}$ (28 $\text{b6} \text{d7}$) 28...$\text{b8}$ 0-1, Timman had to play 27 $\text{xe4}$, though White is much worse after 27...$\text{xe4}$ 28 $\text{xf8}$+ $\text{xf8}$ 29 dxe4 $\text{c4}$ 30 $\text{d2}$ $\text{c5}$+. 
I enjoyed the following game as at two key moments, just when White thought he had the situation under control, he was hit by surprising pawn moves that opened key lines.

(74a) Zotnikov-Gallagher, Arosa 1996. White cannot be allowed to consolidate in such positions. 15...\( \text{f4} \) is the first move that King's Indian players would examine but here there is another solution: 15...\( b5 \)!. White's king is planning to take up residence on the queenside so Black forces open the b-file. Now 16 cxb5 \( \text{dxe4} \) 17 \( \text{dxe4} \) \( \text{Wxb5} \) is very good for Black so White gives up a pawn to maintain his blockade of e4. 16 \( \text{e3} \) \( \text{dxe4} \) 17 \( \text{dxe4} \) bxc4 18 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{Wb5} \) 19 0-0-0 \( \text{d7} \) 20 \( \text{He1} \) \( \text{Wa6} \) 21 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{Aae8} \)?! (I haven't got the space to explain my thinking) 22 \( \text{d2} \) \( \text{Bb8} \) 23 \( \text{Wxe4} \) \( \text{Bb3} \) 24 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{Wfb8} \) 25 \( \text{Eee2} \) (74b). The old adage about a queen being a bad blockader together with the fact that my attack was going nowhere without bishop participation helped me to find...

25...g5!! 26 \( \text{Exg5} \) \( \text{e8} \)! (with the murderous threat \( \text{g6} \)) 27 f4 (the only other try is 27 \( \text{Wf5} \) \( \text{g6} \) 28 \( \text{We6}+ \) \( \text{f7} \) 29 \( \text{Wf5} \), when 29...\( \text{xc3} \) 30 \( \text{xc3} \) \( \text{xd5} \) is good for Black) 27...\( \text{xf4} \) 28 \( \text{Wxf4} \) \( \text{xc3} \)! (one should not play such moves lightly) 29 bxc3 \( \text{Wxa3}+ \) 30 \( \text{d2} \) (74c) 30...\( \text{xc3} \)? 31 \( \text{xe8}+ \)? (losing by force to a precise sequence of checks; the main line was 31 \( \text{xc3} \) \( \text{b2}+ \) 32 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{xc2}+ \) 33 \( \text{xc2} \) \( \text{d3}+ \) 34 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{xe2} \) 35 \( \text{h6} \) \( \text{e7} \), which should be winning for Black, because 36 \( \text{g5}+ \) is no good due to 36...\( \text{xc5}+ \) 37 \( \text{xc5} \) c6!) 31...\( \text{xe8} \) 32 \( \text{xc3} \) \( \text{a2}+ \) 33 \( \text{c2} \) (or 33 \( \text{d1} \) \( \text{e2}+ \) 34 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{e1}+ \) 35 \( \text{c2} \) \( \text{e2}+ \) ) 33...\( \text{a5}+ \) 34 \( \text{c3} \) \( \text{xd5}+ \) 35 \( \text{c1} \) \( \text{e1}+ \) 36 \( \text{b2} \) \( \text{b5}+ \) 37 \( \text{a2} \) \( \text{e2}+ \) 0-1.
**Idea 75 – Don’t Wait to be Squashed**

In a passive (or bad) position it is often worth investing material to change the course of the game. A well-timed counterattack can be difficult to meet for the player who assumed he had everything under control. Here is an example where White kept his nerve:

(75a) Baburin-Gallagher, London Mind Sports Olympiad 1999. Black is quite solid but short of space and if White could just consolidate (Qh2 or a3) Black would be in for an unpleasant afternoon. Therefore...

17...Qh5! 18 Qh2 Qe5! 19 Qe3!?  
After 19 fxe5 Qxe5 I calculated just one short variation: 20 e3 Qxg3! 21 Qxg3 h5!.

On other moves I assumed I would have a strong attack once the g-pawn dropped and my queen could be transported to the kingside. White’s life is made more awkward by the pin on the long diagonal. On 19 Qd5 I suspect Black should play 19...Qd3!?.

19...Qc4 20 Qxc4 bxc4 21 a3 c5! (White is given no time to settle – Black has more space without the knight on c6) 22 Wxd6 cxb4 23 axb4 (75b) 23...Qxh3! 24 Wxd8 Qxd8 25 Qd1! (25 Qxh3 Qd2+ is obvious, but White also loses back the piece after 25 Qxh3 Qxb4; for example, 26 Qe2? Qxb2! 27 Qxb2 Qxc3) 25...Qxg2 26 Qxg2 Qe8 (26...Qxd1 27 Qxd1 f5 wins a pawn but is quite risky after 28 e5) 27 Qa4 (75c) and now a fitting conclusion to the game would have been 27...Qed8! 28 Qaa1! Qe8 with a draw by repetition. Instead after 27...Qxc3? 28 Qxc3 Qxe4 29 Qe5! Qc8 30 Qf3 f5 31 g4! White won a piece and the game (31...Qg7 32 gxf5 gxf5 33 Qg1). Black lost his concentration with a dose of what the Russians call ‘dizziness due to success’.
Idea 76 – Draw? Never!

As a King’s Indian player, there is nothing that motivates me more than trying to crush the wimps who have just exchanged on e5 and on d8. Take a look at the following:

1 d4 ½f6 2 c4 g6 3 ½c3 ½g7 4 e4 d6 5 ½f3 0-0 6 ½e2 e5 7 dxe5 dxe5 8 ½xd8 ½xd8 9 ½g5 ½e8 (the old main line – just because we want to crush them doesn’t mean we have to do anything silly) 10 ½d5 (10 0-0-0 is another story) 10... ½xd5 11 ½xd5 c6 12 ½c4 ½xd5 13 ½xd5 ½d7! (Fischer’s choice) 14 ½d2! (it’s not unusual for White to overlook the threatened ... ½f6; for example, 14 ½c1 h6 15 ½e3 ½f6 16 ½b3 ½xe4 17 ½c7 ½e6 18 ½xe6 ½xe6 19 ½xb7 ½a6 20 a3 ½d6! with a better ending) 14... ½c5 15 ½c4 (15 0-0-0 is supposed to be best; after 15... ½e6! 16 ½e3 ½f4 17 ½xf4 exf4 18 f3 ½e6 19 ½b3 ½xd5 20 ½xd5 f5! Black is active but White can maintain the balance) 15... ½f8 (76a) and now White has castled both ways:

1) 16 0-0 ½e6 17 ½xe6 ½xe6! 18 f3 b5! 19 ½e3 h6 20 ½h4 ½d3 21 ½d5 ½c8 22 b3 ½c2 23 ½fd1 ½b4! 24 ½xb4 ½xb4 25 ½f2 a6 26 a3 ½d2! (76b) (White is now totally paralysed) 27 ½c5 a5 28 ½f1 ½c6 29 b4 a4 30 ½ab1 ½g7 31 ½a1 f5 32 ½g1 ½f6 33 ½f1 ½e6 34 ½f2? (a blunder; ...f4 and ... ½e3+ was my plan) 34... ½xc5! 35 exf5+ ½xg5 36 ½xd2 ½xd2 37 bxc5 ½c2 0-1 Acebal-Gal­laughter, Candas 1992.

2) 16 0-0-0 ½e6 17 ½b1 ½ac8 18 ½e3? (18 ½hel is better) 18... ½xe4! 19 ½xe4 ½xc4 20 ½xb7 ½b8 21 ½d5 ½f5+ 22 ½a1 ½c2 23 ½xa7 (oh dear – only now did White spot that 23 ½b3 is met by 23... ½xb3! 24 axb3 ½c6, forcing mate) 23... ½xb2 24 ½e3 ½b4 25 g4 ½c3 (76c) 0-1 Salgado-Gallag­her, L’Hospitalet 1992. I still find this game hard to believe.
Idea 77 – Under-Promotion

Promoting to a rook is only worthwhile to avoid certain stalemates (or if there is no queen handy and you want to avoid an argument) and promoting to a bishop is virtually irrelevant (though note McShane-Wilhelmi, Lippstadt 1998: \( w\, d3, \Delta f5, \Delta g7, \Delta h7; b\, h5, \Delta a8, \Delta d4, f6: 84 \, g8 \, xg8 \, 85 \, hxg8 \, \Delta ! ! ) so we are going to concern ourselves with promoting to a knight. This possibility should not be neglected – a large number of games have been decided by the unexpected arrival of a knight on the queening square. Here are three of my favourite examples:

(77a) Atalik-Miles, Iraklion 1993. Black has been conducting a ferocious attack and he now finishes brilliantly. \( 28 ... f3! 29 \, w\, xe8 \, fxg2+! 30 \, j\, xf8 \, gxh1D+ !! 0-1. \) White has the choice between \( 31 \, d4+ \) and mate next move, and \( 31 \, e3 \, xe8+ \) with an extra piece for Black.

(77b) Xu Jun-Ivanchuk, Lucerne Wcht 1993. The two players are in the middle of an “I take, he takes, you take” sequence and Xu had anticipated \( 13 ... bxa1D 14 gxh8W \) with an overwhelming position for White. Ivanchuk shocked him with \( 13 ... bxa1D!! \) \( 14 gxh8W \, xxc2, \) when White didn’t have enough for the piece.

(77c) Gallagher-Lane, Hastings 1990. In this ludicrous position I played \( 16 \, \Delta ge1 \) but first I considered the variation \( 16 \, d1 \, xxe3! 17 \, xxe3 \, f2 18 \, xg2 \, f1W+ 19 \, e1 \) to see if White had any tactical chances. What has this got to do with under-promotion you may ask? Well, instead of \( 18 ... f1W+ \) Black can play \( 18 ... f1D! ?, \) forking White’s queen and rook. Black will eventually emerge with an extra piece – 3 knights against knight and bishop!
Idea 78 – Tie Them Down

The player who has the courage to sacrifice to restrict the mobility of the opponent’s pieces is usually well-rewarded. It is very hard to produce your best chess if all you can do is wriggle around on the back couple of ranks. Here is one of the best games of 1999 to illustrate this point.

(78a) J.Polgar-Anand, Dos Hermanas 1999. This is one of the most hotly debated opening variations of recent times. For the moment White has rather vague compensation for the piece – long-term attacking chances combined with Black’s development difficulties. Attention has centred on 11 gxf6 but after a torrid couple of years Black finally seems to be coming to terms with that line – time to open another front...

11...f3!? (the somewhat neglected old line) 11...d4 12 0-0-0 b6d7 13 d2!? dxc3 (13...c7 is more prudent) 14 xc3 g7 (Black has also been blown away a couple of times after 14...c7) 15 g1! 0-0?! 16 gxf6 xf6 17 e3 (planning to prise open the a1-h8 diagonal – xg7 sacrifices now enter the local airspace) 17...h8 18 f4 b6 (the position after 18...c7 19 xg7! xg7 20 fxe5 makes Seirawan feel queasy; 18...e8 is the best chance according to Polgar) 19 g3 h6 20 d6! (ensuring that the black queen will be cut off from the centre and queenside) 20...f6 21 d2! e4 22 c4! b5 23 e6 a7 (78b) 24 c6! (the star move of the game; Black’s only active ideas, ...c7 and ...c5, are both prevented) 24...a5 25 e3 b7 26 d5 b8 27 c7 b4 28 b3! (sadistic and strong; Black can hardly move) 28...b5 29 c6 xf5 30 xc8 (30 xd7 was simpler) 30...xc8 31 xd7 cc5 32 xf5 xf5 33 d1 g8 34 g2 (78c) 1-0.
Idea 79 – The Exchange Sacrifice: Sicilian Style

(79a) “The true Dragon player will analyse six exchange sacrifices on c3 before breakfast” wrote John Nunn in *Beating the Sicilian* 3. Of course there can be no argument with this but it’s not just the Dragon where Black sacrifices the exchange in the Sicilian. I can vouch for the fact that Najdorf players frequently succumb to the temptation, while the exchange sacrifice is also a familiar theme in many other variations.

Black’s exchange sacrifices can be divided into two categories – those where White has castled queenside and those where he has castled kingside. When White has castled long Black doesn’t require as much immediate compensation, assuming that he gets attacking chances against the white king. For example:

(79b) Riemersma-Van der Wiel, Dutch Ch 1993. White has just played 15 g5 and Black took the opportunity to sacrifice the exchange: 15...\(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)xc3! 16 bxc3 (16 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))xc3 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)xc3 17 bxc3 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))xe4 is promising for Black) 16...
\(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)d7 17 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)hg1 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))c5! (note how Black prefers to keep the initiative than waste time on ...\(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))xa2) 18 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)c4 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)c8 19 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))b3? (a blunder in a difficult position) 19...
\(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))xb3 20 axb3 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))e6! 21 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)e3 (21 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))f2 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))a1+ wins) 21...
\(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)xc3 22 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))f2 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))a1+ 23 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\)d2 \(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))c2+ 0-1.

When White has castled kingside, Black may need a little more than doubling White’s c-pawns to provide full compensation for the sacrifice. A centre pawn will usually do nicely (even without doubling the c-pawns) and White can get in serious trouble if he has advanced his kingside pawns.

(79c) Black has just met 12 g2-g4?! with 12...
\(\text{\textit{\textsc{\$}}}}\))c6-e5. White has tried three different moves in this position, and each time Black has chopped on c3:
1) 13 g5? \( \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}3! 14 \text{bxc}3 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4 15 \text{fxg}6 \text{hxg}6 16 \text{\textit{w}} \text{e}1 \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}3! \) was dreadful for White in Fuglsang-Petursson, Copenhagen 1997. If Black picks up a second pawn then White had better start saying his prayers.

2) 13 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}2?! \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}3! 14 \text{bxc}3 \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}6 15 \text{\textit{f}} \text{f}3?! \) (15 \( \text{\textit{a}} \text{a}7 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4 \) is slightly better for Black) 15...\( \text{\textit{d}} \text{xf}3+ \) 16 \( \text{\textit{w}} \text{xf}3 \text{\textit{d}}5! \) 17 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}4 \text{dxe}4 18 \text{\textit{w}} \text{h}3 \) (79d) 18...\( \text{\textit{d}} \text{xg}4! 19 \text{\textit{axg}}7 \) (19 \( \text{\textit{w}} \text{xg}4 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xd}4+ 20 \text{\textit{c}} \text{xd}4 \text{\textit{w}} \text{xd}4+ 21 \text{\textit{g}} \text{g}2 \text{\textit{e}}3+ \) wins) 19...\( \text{\textit{d}} \text{xg}7 \) 20 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4? \text{\textit{w}} \text{b}6+ 21 \text{\textit{f}} \text{f}2 \text{\textit{g}} \text{xf}5 \) 0-1 Daniliuk-Malakhov, Russian Ch 1995. Black wins once he gets his queen to the long diagonal or his rook to the g-file.

3) 13 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}4 \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}3! 14 \text{bxc}3 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4 15 \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}4 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4 16 \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}2 \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}6 17 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xe}4 17 \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}3 \text{\textit{d}} \text{c}6 \) with good play for the exchange, Siegel-Gallagher, Arosa 1996.

Exchange sacrifices are not Black’s exclusive property in the Sicilian. \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{xf}6 \) sacrifices can be an effective way of breaking down the black king’s protective cover, especially if there are knights available to jump into d5 or f5.

(79e) Reinderman-Van Wely, Dutch Ch 1999: 16 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{xf}6 \text{\textit{g}} \text{xf}6 \) 17 \( \text{\textit{w}} \text{h}5 \text{\textit{g}} \text{g}7 \) (17...\( \text{\textit{d}} \text{fd}8 \) may be a better defensive try; e.g. Gallagher-Kempinski, Bundesliga 1998 continued 18 \( \text{\textit{f}} \text{f}1 \text{\textit{b}} \text{b}6! \) 19 \( \text{\textit{h}} \text{h}6 \text{\textit{xb}}2! \) 20 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}5 \text{\textit{d}} \text{xd}5 \) 21 \( \text{\textit{e}} \text{exd}5 \text{\textit{e}}4! \) 22 \( \text{\textit{c}} \text{xe}4 \text{f}5 23 \text{\textit{xf}} \text{f}5 \text{\textit{w}} \text{g}7 \) and the queen saves the day – \( \frac{1}{2}-\frac{1}{2} \), 32) 18 \( \text{\textit{f}} \text{f}1 \text{\textit{h}} \text{h}8 \) 19 \( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}5! \text{\textit{d}} \text{xd}5 \) 20 \( \text{\textit{e}} \text{exd}5 \) (a knight on d5 could not be tolerated but now White’s bishop has been activated and his queenside pawn majority is dangerous, at least in a deflective capacity) 20...\( \text{\textit{d}} \text{d}6 \) 21 \( \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}4 \text{a}5 \) (21...\( \text{\textit{b}} \text{b}6 \) is met by 22 \( \text{\textit{a}} \text{a}5! \) – Black is a tempo short since if he had ...\( \text{\textit{b}} \text{b}6 \) and ...\( \text{\textit{a}} \text{a}5 \) in, then he could probably hold the position) 22 \( \text{\textit{w}} \text{g}4+! \text{\textit{f}} \text{f}8 \) 23 \( \text{\textit{h}} \text{h}4 \text{\textit{a}} \text{a}6 \) (79f) 24 \( \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}5! \text{\textit{d}} \text{xd}5 \) 25 \( \text{\textit{c}} \text{c}4! \text{\textit{d}} \text{c}6 \) 26 \( \text{\textit{w}} \text{h}5! \) and the black position caved in (1-0, 33).
Idea 80 – More About Rooks

What do rooks like? Rooks like open files, they like swinging along the third rank and they love the seventh rank. They are also quite fond of castling and feel more than at home in the endgame. They feel most comfortable when united with their fellow rooks and they really enjoy the occasional tease with a 'mysterious rook move'.

This last phrase was coined by Nimzo-witsch in relation to prophylaxis, and more about this topic can be seen in Idea 34. On other occasions, a mysterious-looking little rook move may disguise the most brilliant combination. This usually happens when one has an idea which almost works and just needs a subtle change to make everything click:

(80a) Brzozka-Bronstein, Miskolc 1963. 46...\(\text{Q}\)xd5+ 47 \(\text{R}\)xd5 leads nowhere for Black in this completely blocked position but after the innocent-looking 46...\(\text{A}\)a6!! Black is winning. Even if White now saw what was coming there was nothing to be done. 47 \(\text{R}\)d1 is virtually the only move; there followed: 47...\(\text{Q}\)xd5+ 48 \(\text{R}\)xd5 (80b) 48...\(\text{R}\)xb3+!! (the best rook move in the entire history of chess according to a tongue-in-cheek Bronstein) 49 \(\text{Q}\)xb3 (after 49 axb3 a2 50 \(\text{Q}\)xa2 \(\text{R}\)xa2 51 \(\text{Q}\)d2 \(\text{R}\)a1 Black has a winning rook ending) 49...\(\text{R}\)b6+ 50 \(\text{Q}\)c2 \(\text{R}\)b2+ 51 \(\text{Q}\)c1 \(\text{R}\)e2 (it's lunch-time for the black rook) 52 \(\text{R}\)d1 \(\text{R}\)xe3 53 \(\text{Q}\)g1 \(\text{Q}\)c3+ 54 \(\text{Q}\)d2 \(\text{Q}\)xc4 55 \(\text{Q}\)c2 d5 56 \(\text{Q}\)b1 d4 (80c) and the pawn-mass easily defeated the bishop: 57 \(\text{Q}\)d1 \(\text{Q}\)e3 58 \(\text{Q}\)b3 e3+ 59 \(\text{Q}\)e2 \(\text{Q}\)c1 60 \(\text{Q}\)xa3 c4 61 \(\text{Q}\)a7+ \(\text{Q}\)d6 62 \(\text{Q}\)a4 \(\text{Q}\)h1 63 \(\text{Q}\)d7+ \(\text{Q}\)c5 64 \(\text{Q}\)c7+ \(\text{Q}\)b4 65 a3+ \(\text{Q}\)c3 66 \(\text{Q}\)b5 \(\text{Q}\)h2+ 67 \(\text{Q}\)f1 d3 68 \(\text{Q}\)xc4+ \(\text{Q}\)b2 69 \(\text{Q}\)g1 e2 70 \(\text{Q}\)xh2 e1\(\text{Q}\) 0-1.
Idea 81 – Irritating the Dragon

Over the years many attempts have been made to slay the Dragon. The vast majority of these have concentrated on crashing through via the h-file. Black has experienced many nervous moments but the Dragon still lives. Recently White has changed tack and been testing Black with timely $\text{b1}$’s. Of course a move like $\text{b1}$ is not going to refute the Dragon but if White can prove even a small advantage, then Dragon players are liable to get depressed and do something stupid.

In diagram 81a White has just responded to the popular 9...d6-d5 pawn sacrifice with 10 $\text{c1-b1}$!? The extraordinary idea behind this move is to meet 10...$\text{xd4}$ with 11 $\text{e5}$!.

At first things weren’t looking too good for Black. He was unable to prove equality after 11...$\text{d7}$ or 11...$\text{xf3}$, while 11...$\text{f5}$ 12 $\text{xf6}$ $\text{xf6}$ 13 $\text{xd5}$ was considered just bad for Black; until, that is, the elegant queen sacrifice 13...$\text{xd5}$!! 14 $\text{xd5}$ $\text{e3}$ 15 $\text{d2}$ $\text{xd1}$ 16 $\text{xd1}$ $\text{e6}$ solved all his problems. White has now virtually abandoned this line.

(81b) This is the main line of the Dragon. Instead of the usual 12 h4, 12 $\text{b1}$ has proved quite troublesome for Black. Despite its wimpish appearance, this move disguises a devilish trap which numbers no fewer than seven recent victims on my database. After 12...$\text{c4}$ (almost universally played) 13 $\text{xc4}$ $\text{xc4}$ 14 $\text{g4}$ b5?! 15 $\text{b3}$! $\text{c5}$? (81c) (15...$\text{c8}$ is the lesser evil though the complications after 16 $\text{dxb5}$! $\text{a5}$ 17 a4 $\text{a6}$ 18 $\text{d5}$! are good for White) 16 $\text{e6}$!! White wins the exchange. Instead of 14...b5?!, Tiviakov gives 14...$\text{a5}$ (14...$\text{c7}$ comes to the same thing) 15 $\text{g5}$ $\text{h5}$ 16 $\text{d5}$ $\text{d8}$ 17 $\text{e2}$ as slightly better for White.
Successful chess-players tend to have a highly developed sense of danger. When it deserts them we are into accident territory.

(82a) Christiansen-Karpov, Wijk aan Zee 1993 features the most embarrassing move of Karpov’s career. He opted for active play on the kingside by 10...\(\text{h}\text{h}5\) 11 \(e3\) \(d6??\) but 12 \(\text{wd1}\) forked his two unprotected pieces and forced resignation. Such disasters are rare at grandmaster level, where players instinctively tend to arrange their pieces so as to defend one another. One is advised to take special care when placing unprotected pieces on the edge of the board.

(82b) Berlovich-Gallagher, Regensburg 1998. I had actually sacrificed a pawn to reach this ending, which is by no means inferior for Black. My opponent, though, was under the impression that he had won a pawn and after 23...\(\text{d}2+\) 24 \(a2\) (24 \(c1\) \(f3\)) 24...\(c4\) he was loathe to settle for 25 \(b1\), when it is up to Black whether to repeat or to play on with 25...\(d2+\) 26 \(a2\) \(f3\). White boldly played 25 \(b3??\), only to have his rook tragically trapped in the middle of the board by 25...\(f7!\) (the point being 26 \(c6\) \(a5+)\). The game concluded 26 \(d5\) \(xe6\) 27 \(c7+\) \(d7\) 28 \(xa8\) \(xf8\) 0-1.

(82c) Kasparov-Short, London PCA Wch (9) 1993. The two players were simply going through the motions – Short had already mentally resigned and Kasparov already mentally chalked up the point. That explains the sequence of moves 46 \(e4??\) \(e6??\), whereas 46...\(c5!\) would have secured a clear draw as White loses one of his pawns without reaching a winning \(\text{H}+\text{A}\) vs \(\text{H}\) position. In my experience anything can happen when one ceases to concentrate.

Idea 82 - Develop Your Sense of Danger
Idea 83 – Queenside Attacks –
The Prophylactic e1 (...e8)

In positions where both players have castled kingside, it can happen that one side attacks on the queenside while the other hammers away on the kingside (many lines of the Sicilian or King's Indian, for example). Other things being equal, the advantage is with the side attacking the king, as his reward for a successful attack is the greater. The sad fact of life for the queenside attacker is that it is irrelevant whether your proud passed pawn has made it to a6 or a7 when you are mated. This doesn’t mean that queenside attacks are less effective – the opponent should be attacked where he is most vulnerable – just that one can’t go 'all-in' in the same manner as one can on the kingside. The queenside attacker must keep one eye on the kingside, and he is more likely to be successful if he combines his queenside attack with precautionary or prophylactic measures on the kingside. The little move e1 (...e8) often confuses the club player (it certainly used to confuse me) but it plays a valuable role in drawing the sting from an opposing attack. The castled position may be defended without creating any weaknesses by freeing f1 (f8) for a minor piece. A bishop on f1 is the best defender against an attack on the g-file, while a knight on f1 is the perfect defender against an assault on h2. It may also jump out to g3 to block the g-file if the attacker switches plan.

The diagrams show three major openings where e1 (...e8) has become standard even before the opponent has really begun his attack. A final point: it doesn’t have to be the e1- or e8-square. If possible a fd1 or ...fc8 may have the same effect.
Idea 84 – More About Opposite-Coloured Bishops

(84a) Conquest-Gallagher, Hastings 1990. After something like 30 a4 White could claim some advantage, but he preferred to collect the loose pawn. 30 xd6?! xd6 31 xc4 b2 32 a4 e7 (the bishop transfers to the key diagonal, from where it will simultaneously blockade White’s pawns and help to create threats against the white king) 33 c6?! (the bishop is out of play here; 33 c6 is better, when 33...b8 looks best; note that even after a queen exchange Black has little to fear – his pieces are superior and the a-pawn looks at least as dangerous as White’s duo) 33...h5! 34 h3 (terribly weakening, but Black was just going to play ...h4-h3 – don’t forget he also has a powerful rook on the 7th rank) 34...f6 35 d3 g5 36 f3 c5 37 h2 c2 38 d1 d2! 39 xd2 xd2 (84b) 40 b5 e1 41 e2 g1+ 42 g3 c1! (threatening ...f4#) 43 f1 xc3+ 44 h2 h4! (White’s defences will soon be overstretched as he won’t be able to fend off both mating threats and the a-pawn) 45 d1 g3+ 46 h1 d6 (not even allowing White to sacrifice his d-pawn to liberate his bishop) 47 d2 a3 48 h2 c5 49 g5 (49 d6 is met by 49...a1!, so 49 e1 was the only chance) 49...f2! 50 f1 g3+ 51 xg3 hxg3+ 52 h1 a4 (84c) (the win is trivial with the white king incarcerated) 53 d6 f8 54 c4 f6 55 h4 a3 56 h5 e8 57 e6 d8 (zugzwang) 58 d7 e3 59 a2 xd7 0-1. Note how even with such reduced material on the board White was unable to defend. If the bishops had been of the same colour he probably would have won quite easily.
Idea 85 – Queen Sacrifices in the KID

King’s Indian players should be familiar with several lines where Black gives up his queen, mostly in order to take over the dark squares.

(85a) Bobotsov-Tal, Varna student OL 1958. 11 \texttt{d5}?! (nowadays White prefers 11 dxc5 dxc5 12 \texttt{d5} \texttt{xd5}! 13 cxd5, ignoring the queen, but 13...\texttt{xd2} 14 \texttt{xd2} f5! is still fine for Black) 11...\texttt{xd5}! 12 \texttt{xa5} \texttt{xe3} 13 \texttt{c1} (Geller believes the only chance is 13 \texttt{d3} in order to hold the d4-square) 13...\texttt{xc4} 14 \texttt{xc4} \texttt{bxc4} 15 \texttt{d1} \texttt{b8} 16 \texttt{xc4} \texttt{b6} 17 \texttt{b3} \texttt{xd4} 18 \texttt{dd2} \texttt{g7} 19 \texttt{e2} c4! 20 \texttt{c2} c3 21 \texttt{d3} cxb2 with a winning game for Black.

(85b) Gavrikov-Landenberque, Silvaplana 1997. 14...\texttt{xd5}! 15 \texttt{xd8} \texttt{e3} 16 \texttt{c1} (16 \texttt{b3} \texttt{f4} 17 \texttt{xf1} \texttt{xd8} Black also has enough play) 16...\texttt{xe4}! 17 \texttt{fxe4} \texttt{bxc4} 18 \texttt{b3} \texttt{ec2} 20 \texttt{b1} a5! 21 a3 a4 22 \texttt{a1} \texttt{d4} 23 \texttt{f1} \texttt{bc6} 24 \texttt{c2} \texttt{xc2} 25 \texttt{xc2} \texttt{d4} 26 \texttt{c1} c5 and Black is in control. White’s bishop is particularly ineffective (0-1, 58).

(85c) Levitt-A.Martin, Glasgow 1989. Just in case you were beginning to think the queen is a worthless piece of wood, take a look at this example from Bronstein’s famous sacrifice in the Sämisch (1 d4 \texttt{f6} 2 c4 g6 3 \texttt{c3} \texttt{g7} 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0 6 \texttt{e3} e5 7 d5 \texttt{h5} 8 \texttt{wd2} \texttt{h4}+ 9 g3 \texttt{xd3} 10 \texttt{f2} \texttt{xf1)}: 26 \texttt{xe6}!! \texttt{xe6} (26...\texttt{xc1} loses to 27 \texttt{h3}) 27 \texttt{h3}! \texttt{g7} 28 \texttt{h1} \texttt{g5} (the main point is that White wins after 28...\texttt{h8} 29 \texttt{xf5} \texttt{f8} 30 \texttt{h3} \texttt{h8} 31 \texttt{d7}+) 29 \texttt{h7}+ \texttt{f6} 30 \texttt{d7}! \texttt{h6} (30...\texttt{g6} 31 \texttt{h7}+ and 32 \texttt{xf5} leads to mate) 31 \texttt{xe6} 1-0. Poor old Andy Martin. In Idea 64 he was crushed by Speelman’s pieces and now he’s destroyed by Levitt’s queen.
Idea 86 – Fun Against the Winawer

If you're having trouble against the French Winawer then you've turned to the right pages – 5 dxc5!? , a line which has been neglected for too long, is another one of my pet systems which I'm plugging in this book. Diagram 86a is reached after the moves 1 e4 e6 2 d4 d5 3 c3 b4 4 e5 c5 (4...e7 5 f3 c5 6 dxc5 transposes) 5 dxc5. On my database White scores about 70% from this position. Even taking into account all my wins against weaker opposition, this is an amazing score, best explained by the fact that opponents tend to know nothing about 5 dxc5, and if they do, they underestimate it. It's really not that bad. Let's take a look at the main line:

Gallagher-Miralles, Geneva 1987 (from 86a): 5...c6 6 f3 ge7 7 d3 d4 8 a3 a5 (8...a5 9 axb4 xal 10 b5 is good for White, while after 8...dxc3 9 axb4 cxb2 10 xb2 xxb4 White has a choice between 11 e4 xdl+ 12 xdl, with an endgame plus, and the sharper 11 g5) 9 b4 xxb4 10 axb4 xxb4 11 0-0 xc3 12 b1 (86b) (this is the position that first attracted me to this line as I felt White had plenty of attacking potential) 12...c7 13 g5!? xe5 14 h5 g6 15 h6 f5 16 xf5 (86c) 16...xf5 (16...exf5 17 b2! e6 18 xc3 dxc3 19 e1 ef6 20 xb7 + is another of my games) 17 f4! (17 xf7!? xf7 18 h5+ is at least a perpetual for White) 17...xc5! (17...xf4 18 g7 d3 (18...f8 19 xh7) 19 xf7+ d8 20 xb7! wins) 18 h5 e7 19 e5 h6 20 h4?! (speculative – 20 xe6! xe6 21 xh8 is good for White) 20 g8 21 xh6 g6 22 h5 b6 23 fd1! (White opens the d-file just in time to prevent the black king escaping) 23...b7 24 xd4 xd4 25 xd4 f6 26 bd1 c6 27 d6
$\text{B}$

Returning to diagram $86b$, theory gives $12...h6$, when White's knight must take another route: $13 \text{Qd}2! \text{Qxd}2 14 \text{Qxd}2 (86d) 14...\text{Qd}7! (14...\text{Qd}5 15 \text{Qe}1 \text{Qf}5?! 16 \text{Qe}4 \text{Qxb}7 17 \text{c}6 — was another game I had) 15 \text{Qxb}7 (after 15 \text{Qg}4 \text{Qc}6, 16 \text{Qb}4 \text{Qd}5 17 \text{Qxd}4 \text{Qxe}5 18 \text{Qe}1 \text{Qf}6! [18...\text{Qxc}5? 19 \text{Qxe}6! wins] is considered unclear, while 16 \text{f}3!? , to block Black's diagonal, is worth looking into) 15...\text{Qc}6 16 \text{Qb}4 \text{Qd}5 (16...a5 17 \text{Qb}6 \text{Qd}5 18 \text{Qg}4 \text{Qxe}5 19 \text{Qe}1 \text{Qxc}5 20 \text{Qxc}6! \text{Qxc}6 (20...\text{Qxc}6 21 \text{Qe}4 \text{Qd}5 22 \text{Qxg}7) 21 \text{Qxg}7 was very unclear in Gallagher-$\text{MChess Pro}$, Simul against Computers, Zurich 1995; 1½-1½, 50) 17 \text{Qg}4 \text{Qd}8 18 \text{Qe}1 \text{g}5 19 \text{Qh}3 \text{g}4 20 \text{Qg}3 \text{h}5 21 \text{Qf}5 \text{Qxf}5 22 \text{Qxf}5 \text{Qxf}5 23 \text{Qxd}8 \text{f}4 (86e) (White's reply really deserves a whole idea to itself) 24 \text{c}4!! \text{dxc}3 25 \text{Qxf}4 and White should have won in Hodgson-S.Arkell, London 1988.

Returning once more to diagram $86b$, the novelty $12...\text{Qd}7!?$ was introduced in the game Gallagher-Shaked, Cannes 1997. After $13 \text{Qg}5 \text{Qc}6 14 \text{Qh}5 \text{g}6 15 \text{Qh}3 (15 \text{Qh}6 \text{Qf}5 16 \text{Qxf}5 \text{gx}f5 17 \text{Qg}7 \text{Qd}7! is good for Black) 15...\text{Qc}7 16 \text{Qf}4 (\text{Shaked was worried about 16 \text{Qe}4 \text{Qxe}4 17 \text{Qxe}4 \text{Qxe}5 18 \text{Qxb}7 \text{Qb}8 19 \text{Qh}6) 16...a5 17 \text{Qc}4 \text{Qf}5 (86f) a draw was agreed. I can't recall if it was because I was being nice to someone who needed a draw for a GM norm or because I didn't like my position. I'm not claiming an advantage for White in these lines — just interesting, unclear positions where homework and knowledge will pay off. For other possibilities, see the next Idea.
Idea 87 – More About 5 dxc5

Diagram 87a features 7...\textit{D}g6, an important alternative to the 7...d4 of the previous Idea. White has:

1) 8 \textit{D}xg6 fxg6 (8...hxg6 9 \textit{D}e3 \pm) 9 \textit{D}e3 0-0 10 0-0 \textit{D}xc3 (\textit{ECO} gives 10...\textit{W}e7 11 \textit{D}b5 \pm) 11 bxc3 \textit{W}c7 12 \textit{B}bl \textit{D}a5 (taking the e-pawn would allow White to establish a bind on the dark squares) 13 \textit{R}el \textit{D}d7 14 \textit{D}d4 with an edge for White, Hodgson-Adams, London Haringey 1989.

2) 8 0-0 and now:

2a) 8...\textit{D}cxe5 9 \textit{D}xe5 \textit{D}xe5 10 \textit{D}f4 \textit{D}xc3 (10...\textit{W}xd3 11 \textit{W}xd3 is also unpleasant for Black, while 10...\textit{W}f6 11 \textit{D}b5+ \textit{D}d7 12 \textit{D}xd5! exd5 13 \textit{D}xe5 \textit{W}xe5 14 \textit{D}xd7+ \textit{D}xd7 15 \textit{W}g4+ is a nice trap) 11 bxc3 \textit{D}xd3 12 cxd3 0-0 13 \textit{B}bl with an edge for White as he has the better bishop (see Idea 41).

2b) 8...\textit{D}xc5 9 \textit{W}e2 (9 \textit{D}g5?! has been played by Zelčić) 9...0-0 10 a3 \textit{D}d7 (10...\textit{W}c7, may be more accurate) 11 \textit{D}d1!? (directed against an annoying ...\textit{D}d4) 11...\textit{W}b8?! 12 \textit{D}xg6 \textit{fxg6} (87b) 13 \textit{D}xd5! exd5 (13...\textit{D}xe5 14 \textit{D}xe5! \textit{B}xf2 15 \textit{D}e7+ \textit{D}h8 (87c) 16 \textit{D}h1!! was the beautiful point) 14 \textit{D}xd5 \textit{D}g4 (14...\textit{B}xf2+ 15 \textit{D}xf2! and 14...\textit{D}xe5 15 \textit{D}xe5 \textit{D}d6 16 \textit{D}d5 \textit{D}g4 17 \textit{W}d3! are good for White) 15 \textit{D}xc5 and Black had very little for his pawns in Gallagher-Libeau, Biel 1993.

Let’s look at a couple of alternatives to 6...\textit{D}ge7 (from diagram 86a play 5...\textit{D}c6 6 \textit{D}f3):

1) 6...d4 7 a3 \textit{D}a5 8 b4 dxc3 9 bxa5 \textit{W}xd1+ 10 \textit{D}xd1 \textit{D}xa5 11 \textit{D}d4 is a rarely-played ending. It looks slightly better for White.

2) 6...\textit{W}c7!? 7 \textit{D}f4 (7 \textit{D}d2!?) 7...\textit{D}ge7 8 a3!? (8 \textit{D}d3 is dodgy on account of 8...d4, while after 8 \textit{D}e2 f6! 9 exf6 \textit{W}xf4 10 fxe7 \textit{D}xc5 John Watson likes Black) 8...\textit{D}xc3+ 9...
JO AITACKING IDEAS IN CHESS

bxc3. Now 9...f6 10 exf6 \(\textit{xf4} 11 fxe7\) is not so promising for Black without a dark-squared bishop. Other tries are 9...\(\textit{a5}\) and 9...\(\textit{g6}\), but these remain to be tested.

Finally, we need to look at Black’s alternatives to 5...\(\textit{c6}\) (see diagram 86a):

1) 5...\(\textit{d4}\) 6 a3 \(\textit{a5}\) 7 b4 dxc3 8 bxa5 \(\textit{xd1}+ 9 \textit{xd1} \textit{e7} 10 \textit{e2}\) favours White.

2) 5...\(\textit{d7}\) 6 \(\textit{g4} \textit{xc3+} 7 \textit{bxc3} \textit{xe5} 8 \textit{wg7} \textit{xf6}\) (87d) 9 \(\textit{h6}!!\) (Jacobs-Carton, London GLC 1986) is a wonderful trap. Black loses an exchange (9...\(\textit{d7}\) 10 \(\textit{b5}!\)).

3) 5...\(\textit{c7}\) 6 \(\textit{f3} \textit{d7}\) 7 \(\textit{f4} \textit{e7}\) 8 \(\textit{d3}\) \(\textit{xc5}\) (8...\(\textit{g6}\) 9 \(\textit{g3} \textit{xc5}\) 10 0-0 is a typical pawn sacrifice) 9 0-0 \(\textit{xc3} 10 \textit{bxc3}\) \(\textit{xd3}\) 11 \(\textit{xd3}\) (11 \(\textit{xd3}??\)) 11...\(\textit{d7}\) 12 \(\textit{b1}\) a6 13 \(\textit{d4} \textit{g6}\) 14 \(\textit{g3} b5\) 15 f4 (87e). White’s attacking chances more than compensate for the weakness on c3, Gallagher-Negele, San Bernardino 1994.

4) 5...\(\textit{g6}\) 6 \(\textit{f3} \textit{d7}\) (6...\(\textit{c7}\) is met by 7 \(\textit{d2}?!\) or 7 \(\textit{d3} \textit{d7}\) transposing to ‘4b’) 7 \(\textit{d3}\) (on 7 \(\textit{d4}\) \(\textit{g4}\) ±, but 7...\(\textit{a5}\) is better) and now:

4a) 7...\(\textit{g6}\) 8 0-0 \(\textit{gxe5} 9 \textit{xe5} \textit{xe5}\) transposes to note ‘2a’ above.

4b) 7...\(\textit{c7}\) 8 0-0 \(\textit{xc3} 9 \textit{bxc3} \textit{xc5}\) (after 9...\(\textit{xe5}\), 10 \(\textit{f4} \textit{xf3+} 11 \textit{xf3} e5\) 12 \(\textit{b5}\) is dangerous for Black; 10 \(\textit{xe5} \textit{xe5}\) 11 \(\textit{b5+} \textit{c6}\) 12 \textit{d4}\) is a safe edge) 10 \(\textit{e1} \textit{xd3}\) (10...0-0 invites a Greek Gift; 10...\(\textit{d7}\) is an alternative) 11 \(\textit{xd3} \textit{d7}\) 12 \(\textit{b1}\) a6 13 \(\textit{a3}\) is pleasant for White.

4c) 7...\(\textit{xc5}\) 8 0-0 \(\textit{d7}\) 9 \(\textit{b5} \textit{xd3}\) 10 \(\textit{xd3} \textit{g6}\) (10...a6 11 \textit{bd4} \textit{c5} 12 c3) 11 \(\textit{g5} \textit{b6}\) 12 a4 \(\textit{xb5} 13 \textit{axb5} h6\) 14 \(\textit{c1}\) (the queen’s rook is intending to swing) 14...0-0 15 \(\textit{a4} a5\) 16 c3 \(\textit{c5}\) 17 h4 f5? 18 \(\textit{xf6} \textit{xf6}\) (87f) 19 \(\textit{xe6!} \textit{h6}\) 19...\(\textit{e5}\) 20 \(\textit{xe5} \textit{xf2+} 21 \textit{h2} \textit{exh6}\) 22 g3! is good for White) 20 \(\textit{g4}\) Gallagher-Reust, Swiss League 1994. White is winning, as 20...\(\textit{f7}\) loses to 21 \(\textit{g6}!\).
Idea 88 – Necessity is the Mother of Invention

When all seems lost, one is permitted to stretch the boundaries of reality in the search for a solution. Very occasionally our creative thinking pays off.

(88a) Rogozenko-Gallagher, Bundesliga 1998/9. I have just played the desirable 17...h4, assuming that 18 e5 could be met by 18...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h5}\) and failing that 18...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g4}\). My opponent, visibly surprised, hesitated for a while and banged out 18 e5 anyway. I soon spotted that 18...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h5}\) 19 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}d5}\)! was unpleasant so I turned to the reserve choice, 18...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g4}\). After the obvious 19 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f4}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xg3}\) 20 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xg3}\) I only had eyes for 20...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xe5}\) but 21 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}c6}\) (88b) 21...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f6}\) 22 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xb8}\) just seemed good for White. Suddenly, as I was beginning to despair, I was struck by the variation (after 21 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}c6}\)) 21...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xf4}!!\) 22 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xd8}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}d4}+!\) 23 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xd4}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xe1}+!\) +24 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xf1}+\) 25 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xf1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e3}+\) 26 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xc2}\) and Black wins. When I saw that I had a playable line as well after 23 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h1}\) I was ready to go. Rogozenko did indeed play 23 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h1}\)! (23 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\)? \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h2}#\)) and after 23...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xe1}+!\) 24 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xe1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f2}+\) (88c) I had expected either:

1) 25 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h2}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g4}+\) 26 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f2}+\) with a draw by perpetual check; or:

2) 25 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e4}+!\) (after 25...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g4}+\) 26 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h2}+\) 27 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e2}\) the king escapes) 26 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h2}\) (26 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xg3}#!\)) 26...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xg3}+\) 27 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}h1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f2}+\) 28 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}g1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}d3}+\) (now after 28...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e4}+\) 29 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\) Black cannot take his own pawn on g3) 29 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xe1}\) 30 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xe1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xd8}\) and I believe Black has sufficient compensation.

3) Fortunately for me, Rogozenko lost the plot with 25 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xf2}?.\) After 25...\(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xf2}\) 26 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}f1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}xg3}\) 27 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}c6}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e8}\) 28 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}b2}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}d3}\) 29 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}a1}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e6}!\) 30 \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}b8}\) \(\texttt{\texttt{\&}e5}\) Black was completely winning (0-1, 47).
Idea 89 – The Sting in the Tail

If your opponent sets a trap, then check it carefully to make sure that it really works. There's little to rival falling into a supposed trap only to emerge smelling of roses on the other side.

13 dxe6 fxe6 (Howell didn’t want to recapture with the queen or bishop as this would leave him at a positional disadvantage, but he’d planned the text-move assuming that 14 Bxd6 lost material for White; however...) 14 Bxd6! Bf5 (14...Bd5 meets with a similar refutation) 15 Bxd7!! The beautiful point is that after 15...Bxe3 16 Bxd8+ Bd7 17 Bxd7+!! Bd8 (17...Bxd7 18 Bxe5+) 17 fxe3 Black still can’t take the rook, and thus White has a decisive material advantage. Instead of 15...Bxe3 Howell played 15...Bxd7 but after 16 Bxe5! Bd8 (16...Bxe3 17 Bxg6 Bxf1 18 Bxh8 Bxg2 19 Bxg1 costs Black a whole piece) 17 Bxd7+ Bxd7 18 Bf4 White’s combination had netted him a pawn; he went on to win.

(89b) Kramnik-Karpov, Frankfurt Giants rpd 1999. Black has just played 19...Bc5-c4?, allowing the combination 20 Bxg7+! Bxg7 21 Bf5+ exf5 22 Bxe7 Bxe7 as he has a rook and two pieces for the queen. However, Kramnik continued 23 Bd2! picking up one of the loose knights.

(89c) Bologan-Prasad, Linares 1999. An earlier Bb1 had provoked ...g6 and the queen has just returned to c1 to exploit the resulting dark-squared weaknesses. Now there is a little combination to gain a clear advantage: 19 Bxc5! Bxc5 20 Bxh5! gxh5 (20...Bf5? 21 Bxh6 forces mate) 21 Bxh6 Bf5 22 Bxf5 Bxf5 23 Bxc6! Simple, but it all has to be seen on move 19 and many players would stop their calculations after 21...Bf5, missing the change of direction.
Idea 90 – More About the Bishops

Idea 70 featured a wonderful attacking game with the bishop-pair. Now we are going to examine an ending where the bishops gradually took charge of the whole board.

(90a) Svidler-Kasparov, Linares 1999. 17...\(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e8\)!. Kasparov shows his class with this profound retreat. Firstly, there is no point White taking the pawn on e4 at once as after 18 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xe4\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c6\)! Black, by exploiting the pin on the d4-knight, regains the pawn and opens the position for his bishops in the process. Therefore White must defend his rook on d1 before he can take the pawn. This can only be done by c3 and \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c2\) but after these moves Black is quite happy to part with a pawn as the scope of his light-squared bishop has increased and his minority attack now has a target to latch onto. 18 c3 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}ac8\) 19 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c2\) b5! 20 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xe4\) b4 21 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e3\) a5 22 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e2\)?

(90b) (a serious mistake – the knight on d4 was shielding White from the power of the bishops; better is 22 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}ed3\), when Black has compensation for the pawn, but perhaps no more than that) 22...\(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c6\) 23 f3 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xd1\) 24 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xd1\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e5\) 25 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}d3\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}b5\) 26 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}d2\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e3\) 27 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}d6\) bxc3 28 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xc3\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}f1\) 29 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}h4\)?! (White can’t save his g-pawn but he shouldn’t have encouraged Black to advance his; 29 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e1\) was better) 29...\(\texttt{\textasciitilde}g5\) 30 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e1\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xg2\) 31 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e2\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}f4\) 32 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}g3\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c1\) 33 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}a4\) h5! 34 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}d1\) h4 35 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e1\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}f4\) 36 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c3\) (90c) (the black queenside pawns hardly matter any more as Black’s h-pawn, supported by the bishops, is going to win any race; instead White pins his hopes on a doomed attempt to lock Black’s bishops in on the kingside) 36...\(\texttt{\textasciitilde}g7\) 37 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}b6\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}h8\) 38 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}f2\) h3 39 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}d2\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}xh2\) 40 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}d7\) \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}g6\) 41 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}e3\) g4! 42 fxg4 \(\texttt{\textasciitilde}c6\)! 0-1.
Idea 91 – A Trip to Planet Shirov

Alexei Shirov has produced some of the most entertaining chess of recent years. Careful, or even casual, study of his games should certainly help to develop your imagination. Here is an example:

(91a) Topalov-Shirov, Linares 1998. Despite having two extra pawns it is difficult for Black to make progress by normal means as the white king makes it to the centre or queenside on time. Shirov finds an astonishing way to defy geometry: 47...\text{h}3!!., a move so outrageous that it emerged victorious in BCM's recent competition to find the most amazing move of all time. Once we have recovered from our initial shock, it is not too difficult to come to terms with the move. The salient points are that the bishop is no longer blocking the king's path to e4 (via f5), that White will have to spend a valuable tempo capturing the bishop, and that once he takes it (or allows \text{xf}2) Black will obtain a third passed pawn, which allows him to win even without his bishop. The hardest part is that the move must occur to you. Play continued 48 gxh3 (48 \text{f}2 \text{f}5 49 \text{f}3 \text{xf}2+! is similar, while 48 g3 {to stop Black getting three passed pawns} 48...\text{f}5 49 \text{f}2 \text{e}4 50 \text{e}2 a3 51 \text{d}2 d4 52 \text{a}1 \text{g}4 (91b) is zugzwang) 48...\text{f}5 49 \text{f}2 \text{e}4 50 \text{xf}6 (after 50 \text{e}2 d4 Black will push his f-pawn until White takes it, after which he plays \text{d}3-c2 and wins as in the game) 50...d4 (threatening to queen the a-pawn) 51 \text{e}7 \text{d}3 52 \text{c}5 (91c) 52...\text{c}4! (an important point in the combination – the bishop is forced to an inferior square; on 52...\text{c}3? 53 \text{e}2 the white king makes it to d1 and Black is probably lost) 53 \text{e}7 \text{b}3 0-1. After 54...\text{c}2 Black will queen one of his pawns.
Idea 92 – The Game That Had it All

Morozevich-Petursson, Reykjavik ECC 1999. A 'new kid on the block' throws everything at an experienced grandmaster in one of 1999's most dramatic games. 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 g6 3 d4 exd4 4 Wxd4 Qf6 5 e5 Qc6 6 Wa4 Qd5 7 Wc4 Qdb4 8 Qb5 Wa5 9 Qc3 Qg7 (9...d5 10 We2 Qg4 is assessed as unclear by NCO) 10 0-0 0-0 11 a3 d5 (of course the a-pawn is pinned but you will notice that attacked pieces rarely move in this game) 12 exd6 Qf5 13 Wc4 Qxc2 (92a) 14 Qc4 Qxc2 (92a) 14 Qd5 e6 (14...Qxa1 15 dxe7 Wxe7 16 b4 traps the queen) 15 Qe7+ Qxe7 16 dxe7 Qf8 17 Qd2 Qb6 18 e8W+! Qxe8 19 Qxe8 Qxe8 (19...Qxa1 is not out of the question) 20 Qac1 (this rook has survived seven moves en prise) 20...Wxb2 21 g4 Qxa3 (92b) (if you were expecting the game to enter a quiet period after the excitement of the early middlegame then you are to be disappointed) 22 Qe8! Qb5 (22...Qxc8 23 Qxc8+ Qf8 24 Qh6 Qb4 25 Qxf8+ Qxf8 26 Qxf8 wins) 23 gxf5 Qb2 (threatening to take the queen) 24 Qh6 (24 Qc5 Qxc1 25 Qxc1 Qxc5 should be OK for Black) 24...Qg7 25 Qe3 Qb2 26 fxe6?! Qxc8 27 Qxc8+ Qg7 28 e7 Wd7! (now Black can expect to save the day by perpetual check) 29 e8Q+!? (29 e8W Wg4+ 30 Qh1 Wxf3+ is a draw) 29...Qh8 30 Qd6+ Qg7 31 Qe8+ Qh8 32 Qc1 (92c) 0-1

White lost on time while making this last-ditch winning attempt. In fact the game is still a draw after 32...Wg4+ (32...Qxc1? 33 Qd4+ f6 34 Qxf6+ Qg8 35 Qd6+ should be winning for White) 33 Qf1 Wxf3 34 Qc7! when Black has nothing better than to take the perpetual check with 34...Wd1+ 35 Qg2 Wg4+. Even in defeat Morozevich confirms his potential.
Idea 93 – Stalemate

Stalemate combinations scrape into my definition of an attacking idea: they can be considered a desperate form of attack in a desperate situation.

(93a) Gallagher-C.Morrison, British Ch (Edinburgh) 1985. Having lost a piece 30 moves previously I was delighted to reach the diagram position, where the win has become problematic for Black. 60 a6 b6 61 ハa8 ハh7 62 ハc6! ハ6?! (62...ハg4! wins as after 63 b5 Black mates with 63...ハe5+ and 64...ハd7#, while 63 ハxa7 ハe5+ 64 ハxb6 ハc4+ 65 ハc5 ハxa7 66 ハc4 ハxa6 is a lost rook vs pawn position) 63 b5! (the white king is now in the net, while the pawn is one step nearer the queening square) 63...ハd5? (Black should play 63...ハe7, threatening...ハd5, when 64 ハxa7? ハxa7 65 ハxb6 ハd7 is lost for White, though after 64 ハh8! Black still has work to do, since 64...ハe8?? allows White to draw by means of the surprising 65 ハh7!) 64 ハxa7! (93b) 64...ハb4+ (64...ハxa7 is stalemate, while 64...ハe7+ 65 ハc7+ ハc7 66 ハxb6 is also a draw) 65 ハxb6 ハd5+ 66 ハa5! ハxa7 67 b6! with an immediate draw.

Many studies use stalemate as their central theme. The following was the adolescent Dr Nunn’s favourite:

(93c) Study by L. Kubbel 1921, White to play and draw: 1 ハd4!! with the double threat of ハe6 and ハa3+. Therefore 1...ハxd4 can be discounted immediately on account of 2 ハa3+ and amazingly, apart from 1...ハxd4, there is no other way for Black to save his queen. The most complicated variation is 1...ハd8 2 ハa3+ ハb7 3 ハb3+ ハc8 4 ハb4+! ハxb8 5 ハc6+. After 1...ハxd4 2 ハa3+ ハb5 3 ハb3+ ハc4 4 ハc3+ Black can only escape the checks by crossing to the d-file but after 4...ハd5 there is 5 ハd3! ハxd3 stalemate.
Idea 94 – Transformation of Advantages

When I hear the expression ‘transformation of advantages’, the game Fischer-Petrosian, Buenos Aires Ct (7) 1971 (94a) immediately springs to mind. White’s knight is undoubtedly a superior piece to Black’s bishop and I’m sure many a strong player would just play 22 a4 without much thought in order to keep the bishop bottled up. Fischer, however, found the neater solution: 22 ¤xd7+! ¤xd7 23 ¼c1, transforming his good knight vs bad bishop position into a dangerous open c-file for his rook. The game concluded 23...¢d6 24 ¼c7 (Black had prevented ¼c6, which he considered to be the greater evil) 24...¢d7 25 ¤e2 g6 26 ²f2 h5 27 f4 h4 28 ³f3 f5 29 ¤e3 d4+ 30 ¤d2 ¤b6 31 ¤e7 ¤d5 32 ¼f7+ ¤e8 33 ¤b7 ¼xf4 34 ¼c4 1-0. Fischer’s technique was of course exemplary but Botvinnik commented that Petrosian was unrecognizable in this game.

One of the main reasons for seeking to transform an advantage is to reduce risk. A common way to exploit an extra exchange, for example, is to return some, or all, of the material to reach a favourable endgame. In diagram 94b, Kramnik-Svidler, Linares 1999, White has good winning chances after any sensible plan, but Kramnik finds an elegant transforming combination which ensures the full point: 28 ²xf7! ²xf7 (28...²xf7 is similar) 29 ²xd7! ²xd7 30 ²xd7+ ²h6 31 ²xc7 (94c). In such a position, the two rooks win very easily against the queen – they can simply gang up on the a-pawn, remove it and then repeat the process on the g-pawn, and there is absolutely nothing Black can do. Svidler resigned after 31...²d3 32 ²g1 ²d4 33 ²c2 1-0.
Idea 95 – “Take My Rooks!”

The double rook sacrifice is a romantic part of chess folklore – whole books have even been devoted to this topic. Here are a couple of examples from my own practice.

(95a) Gallagher-Conquest, British Ch (Blackpool) 1988. I felt that one of the strangest games I’d ever played was drawing to a conclusion. I had sacrificed a piece to pull off what seemed to be a neat drawing combination. Conquest had other ideas: 25 \[\text{g7+ \text{d8}!!} \]
(I had expected a repetition after 25 \[\text{f8} 26 \text{f7+ \text{e8}, etc.}\]) 26 \text{hxg8+ \text{e7}!} (not 26 ... \text{c7 27 c3+}) 27 \text{e2+ \text{e5}! 28 xc8} (Black has sacrificed two rooks and self-pinned his knight to avoid perpetual; now it’s his go!) 28 ... \text{xb2+ 29 \text{d2 xg1} 30 fxe5} (95b) 30 ... \text{c1+ 31 c3 d4+ 32 b3 b2+ 33 c4 b5+ 34 axb5 axb5+ 35 d3 d4# (0-1).}

(95c) Klundt-Gallagher, Royan 1988. Black’s bind on the dark squares and the permanently exposed white king provide good long-term compensation for the piece, but an opportunity has arisen to solve the position by tactical means: 21 ... e4! 22 \text{xe4} (22 \text{c3 0-0! 23 xe4 ae8 is very dangerous for White}) 22 ... \text{e5 23 c3} (White had been relying on this move) 23 ... \text{xe4!! 24 xh8+ d7 25 xa8 xh1+ 26 d2 e3+!} (a crucial point as otherwise White’s \text{c6+ would pick up the bishop}) 27 d3 xa1 (a unique sequence? I’ve certainly never seen the rooks disappear like that in another game; Black is now winning – he has a material advantage and his king can escape trouble by running to the kingside or with the aid of the returning black queen) 28 \text{c6+ d8 29 d6 xa3+ 30 c3 c5! 31 a8+ c8 32 e4 c4+! 33 xc4 bxc4+ 34 xc4 d7! 35 d5 f3 36 e4 f2 37 g3 f4 0-1.}
Idea 96 – The Surprising g2-g4!?

New life is being injected into many openings by the aggressive advance g4. The latest example is in a variation of the rock-solid Petroff Defence. The line 1 e4 e5 2 ∆f3 ∆f6 3 ∆xe5 d6 4 ∆f3 ∆xe4 5 d4 d5 6 ∆d3 ∆e7 7 0-0 ∆c6 8 c4 ∆b4 9 cxd5 ∆xd3 10 ∅xd3 ∅xd5 11 ∅e1 ∅f5 (96a) had long been considered innocuous as after 12 ∅c3 ∅xc3 13 ∅xc3 Black can block the e-file with 13...∆e6. In the 1999 Frankfurt Giants rapidplay tournament Anand introduced 12 g4!?, which he played no fewer than three times in the tournament. The point is that after 12...∆g6 13 ∅c3 ∅xc3 14 ∅xc3 (96b) Black can no longer block the e-file. The question is whether this is worth wrecking one’s kingside for. At first it appeared the answer was no. Anand-Kramnik (round 1) continued 14...大卫d6 15 ∅e3 ∅f8 16 ∅e5 f6 17 ∅f3 ∅d8 18 ∅f4 ∅d5 19 ∅xd5 ½-½. Anand did some work and was soon at it again. In round 5 Karpov preferred 14...大卫f8 and after 15 ∅f4 c6 (96c) 16 ∅e3 h5 17 g5 Black eventually won a sharp game, though Anand could have won quite easily at one point. Round 7, Anand-Kramnik, again we reach the position of diagram 96b, but this time Kramnik opts to follow Karpov. After 14...大卫f8 15 ∅f4 c6 Anand surprises him with 16 ∅xe7! ∅xe7 17 ∅b4+ ∅d8 18大卫xb7 ∅c8 19 ∅g5+! f6 20大卫xg7 and soon wins. Why didn’t Anand play this against Karpov and why did Kramnik repeat such a duff line? By the time this book is published the truth may well be known, but perhaps they overlooked that after 17...c5 (instead of 17...大卫d8) 18 dxc5!大卫xf3 19 c6+ ∅d8 20 cxb7大卫xg4+ White can avoid perpetual with 21 ∅g3!, when 21大卫xb4 22 bxa8大卫+ wins a massive amount of material.
Idea 97 – Attacking Empty Squares

It's much easier to see a tactical trick or combination if it involves taking something. Here are a couple of examples where the sacrifice was hard to envisage:

(97a) Gallagher-Korneev, Cannes 1998. Despite the reduced material, White's control of the e-file gives him a nagging edge. Korneev, naturally, wanted an open file for his own rooks, and so played 17...d4 18 cxd4 $\text{exd4}$ only to be given the fright of his life by the reply 19 $\text{wc8}$! Fortunately for him that's all it was – a fright. He would never had overlooked the move if it had been $\text{wx}c8$. 19...g6! (White was not only threatening the b-pawn but also 20 $\text{wx}f8+!$) 20 $\text{wx}b7$ (20 $\text{wxe}8$ $\text{exe}8$ 21 $\text{exe}8+$ $\text{g}7$ 22 $\text{g}8+$ $\text{h}6$ 23 $\text{w}h3+$ $\text{h}4$ leads nowhere) 20...$\text{d}2$ 21 $\text{w}e2$ $\text{exe}2$ 22 $\text{exe}2$ $\text{wd}6$! (97b). Black wins back his pawn; White retained only a token advantage after 23 $\text{we}7$ $\text{wd}1+$ 24 $\text{xf}2$ $\text{wc}2$ 25 $\text{we}2$. In the end 17...d4 probably deserves an '!' but I still enjoyed 19 $\text{wc8}$!.

(97c) Kasparov-Short, London PCA Wch (17) 1993. Black has just played 23...hxg3 and White has four possible recaptures. 24 $\text{wx}g3$ is stupid (and allows 24...$\text{xf}2+$), while 24 $\text{hx}g3$! is best, with a clear plus for White according to Short. It's quite possible that Kasparov saw that 24 hxg3? is met by 24...$\text{xf}2$! so he decided to play 24 fxg3?, only to be shocked by the reply 24...$\text{xf}2!!$. He, like Korneev, was lucky that after 25 $\text{fx}f2$ $\text{xh}2+$ 26 $\text{f}1$ $\text{exe}2!$ 27 $\text{exe}2$ $\text{h}1+$ 28 $\text{f}2$ $\text{xd}1$ 29 b3! that he had a tenable ending, which he duly held with accurate defence.
Idea 98 – $\hbar c4$!? Against the Sicilian

If you like to attack, there are worse ways to spend your time than investigating lines in the Sicilian where White plays an early $\hbar c4$. Such positions have already been discussed in Idea 16, so here I would like to present a highly original attacking game from Veselin Topalov, a man who has received more than his fair share of drubbings in this book. A victory over the World No. 1 should go some way towards redressing the balance.

Topalov-Kasparov, Amsterdam 1996: 1 $e4$ $c5$ 2 $\lt:lf3$ $d6$ 3 $d4$ $cxd4$ 4 $\lt:lf6$ 5 $\hbar c3$ $a6$ 6 $\hbar c4$ $e6$ 7 $\hbar b3$ $\hbar bd7$ 8 $f4$ $\hbar c5$ 9 0-0 (9 $e5$ is an incredibly sharp alternative – remember the 1993 Kasparov-Short match?) 9...$\hbar x e4$!? (9...$\hbar e7$ is more solid) 10 $\hbar x e4$ $\hbar x e4$ 11 $f5$ $e5$ 12 $\hbar h5$ (98a) 12...$\hbar e7$?

A couple of rounds later in Topalov-Short Black improved with 12...$d5$!. After 13 $\lt:le1$ $\hbar c5$ 14 $\hbar xe4$ $\hbar xd4+$ 15 $\hbar e3$ 0-0 16 $\hbar xd4$ $exd4$ 17 $\hbar xd4$ $f6$, 18 $\hbar f3$ would have given White adequate compensation for the exchange. In general, I would advise Black to be cautious about grabbing the e-pawn in such positions.

13 $\hbar f3$ $\hbar c5$ (13...$exd4$ 14 $\hbar e1$) 14 $\hbar c6$! $\hbar c7$ 15 $\hbar d5$ $a5$?! (Kasparov plans to expel the knight with his queen’s rook) 16 $\hbar g5$! $\hbar a6$ 17 $\hbar d8$!! (98b) (this would have made my selection for the most amazing moves ever played competition; Kasparov must have completely overlooked it; now he is just lost as he can’t protect $f7$) 17...$f6$ 18 $\hbar f7$ $\hbar g8$ 19 $\hbar e3$ $g6$ 20 $\hbar g5$! $\hbar g7$ (20...$fxg5$ is best met by 21 $f6$!) 21 $fxg6$ $\hbar x g6$! (maximum resistance; 21...$hxg6$ 22 $\hbar xf6$ gives White a decisive attack) 22 $\hbar f7$+ $\hbar xf7$ 23 $\hbar xf7$ $\hbar xf7$ 24 $\hbar xc5$ $dxc5$ 25 $\hbar ad1$ (98c) and White eventually overcame some tough resistance (1-0, 66).
Idea 99 – Use Modern Technology

One of the reasons Kasparov has remained at the top so long is that he has made better use of computers than many of his rivals. It is no good saying that you don’t like them, he says, they are here to stay so you had better make the most of them. Computers are particularly helpful for opening preparation. Many risky-looking lines which, in the past, have been avoided on general principle can now be worked out with the aid of cheap commercial programs, as long as these programs are given a prod in the right direction. The famous Anand-Kasparov game from Linares 1999, for example, would probably never have seen the light a few years ago.

Computer programs can also be used to check established theory for serious errors. There are a surprising number of them. Take diagram 99a, for example. The position after 14...\texttt{a}xc4 15 \texttt{w}xc4 \texttt{e}e8 16 \texttt{d}d3 \texttt{e}8 17 \texttt{d}d5 (99b) (Emms-David, Cappelle la Grande 1997) is assessed as $\pm$ by some guy called Gallagher in NCO. In fact, I took some time over this assessment as it seemed quite controversial to allow Black to take the bishop. The problem is not with the assessment, though, but with 14...\texttt{d}xc4. I glossed over this natural move without even a second’s hesitation – and a second was all that was needed for a glance at my analysis engine, which was undoubtedly screaming out 14...\texttt{a}xh3!!. The point is that Black has a decisive advantage after 15 gxh3 \texttt{w}c8! (99c) with a double threat of ...\texttt{w}xc4 and ...\texttt{w}xh3. My apologies, if I was their source, to Luke McShane and Harriet Hunt who both fell victim to this trap in Summer 1999.
Idea 100 – Don’t Get Dejected

If you’ve just been floored by a fine combination, then pick yourself up, dust yourself down and start looking for a way out. Dejection has no place in a chess game. If you don’t believe there is a solution, then you are liable to miss the saving idea if it exists. In the first example below the groggy player recovered admirably. In the second … well, you’ll see.

(100a) Nijboer-Van der Sterren, Dutch Ch (Rotterdam) 1999. 23…\texttt{wx}b2! 24 \texttt{A}xd4 \texttt{He}3! 25 \texttt{Q}d1! (of course 25 \texttt{wx}e3 \texttt{wx}g2# was Black’s point) 25…\texttt{wx}d4 26 \texttt{Q}xe3 \texttt{He}8! (100b). Black now appears to be winning back his piece with a completely won game. Nijboer kept his cool. A dejected player would never have found the brilliant defence 27 \texttt{h}6! \texttt{xe}3 28 \texttt{xf}5!! It’s amazing that this works when you take into account the weakness of the back rank. The first point is that 28…\texttt{g}f5 29 \texttt{xf}6# is mate and secondly 28…\texttt{c}1+ 29 \texttt{f}1 \texttt{xc}4 30 \texttt{f}8+ \texttt{xf}8 31 \texttt{xf}8+ \texttt{g}8 32 \texttt{xf}6+ leads to perpetual. 28…\texttt{g}2+ is also just a draw after 29 \texttt{g}2+ 30 \texttt{f}3 \texttt{g}4+ 31 \texttt{f}2, and meanwhile White is threatening mate in two. Black tried 28…\texttt{d}5 29 \texttt{f}8+ \texttt{g}8 but after 30 \texttt{h}3! \texttt{e}7 31 \texttt{xe}8 \texttt{exe}8 32 \texttt{h}4 \texttt{e}5 33 \texttt{g}x\texttt{g}8 \texttt{g}x\texttt{g}8 34 \texttt{c}4+ \texttt{g}7 35 \texttt{a}4 the game soon finished in a draw.

(100c) Tischbierek-Wahls, German Ch (Bremen) 1998: White has just captured a pawn on a5 and Black now stunned him with 29…\texttt{c}3!. The point is that after 30 bxc3 \texttt{b}1+ and 30 \texttt{d}4+ \texttt{xd}4 31 \texttt{xd}4 \texttt{c}1+ White is mated on the back rank. A dejected Tischbierek, not seeing another move to avoid the loss of a rook, resigned! Instead 30 \texttt{c}2!, with the point 30…\texttt{xa}5 31 \texttt{d}4+, leaves Black to find the accurate 30…\texttt{d}8! 31 \texttt{a}1 \texttt{xb}2 to hold the balance.
Idea 101 – Knight Time

As you will no doubt have noticed during the course of this book, the knight is the tactician’s dream piece. Though it can be a bit of a slouch when play is stretched from one wing to the other, it shines extremely brightly when it only has to perform in one sector of the board. As well as being resolute in defence (see Idea 95, for example) the knight can be full of subtlety and delicate touches in attack. Here are a couple that I really enjoyed; the first as a spectator and the second as a player.

(101a) Arkell-Conquest, British Ch (Scarborough) 1999. White is in a bad way but with Black in his habitual time-trouble Arkell has just made a spirited attempt to confuse the issue with 26 Qc3-b5. Though it is not the only way to win, Conquest’s choice, 26...Qe2!!, deserves our admiration. The beautiful point is 27 Qxf2 Qxf2# (101b), when 28 Qxf2 Qxf2# is mate and the only way to stop the threatened 28...Qg1+ 29 Qxg1 Qf2# is by 28 Qxe2, which is obviously hopeless. The game concluded 27 Qd3 Qxf2+ 28 Qxf2 Qxf2 29 Qa3 Qd2 0-1.

(101c) Gallagher-Klauser, Biel 1991. Black is clearly worse but didn’t appreciate quite how bad things were. I’ll never forget my opponent’s shocked reaction when I calmly removed his f-pawn. After 38 Qxf5! one of the recaptures is illegal and the other two lose material. White soon won. Sometimes one is able to exploit a double pin but blessed indeed is the player who gets the chance to exploit a triple pin.
3) Gallagher-Curran, Lyons 1993: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 \( \text{g}f3 \text{g}f6 4 \text{e}5 \text{h}5 5 \text{d}4 \text{g}6 6 \text{h}\text{e}2 \text{g}7 7 0-0 \text{d}6 8 \text{exd}6 \text{cxd}6 9 \text{h}c3 0-0 10 \text{h}c1 \text{h}6 \text{f}6 11 \text{h}x\text{f}4 \text{c}6 12 \text{h}g5 \text{h}6 13 \text{h}h4 \text{d}5 14 \text{h}b5 \text{w}d6 15 \text{h}g3 \text{w}d7 16 \text{h}e5 \text{e}8 17 \text{d}3 a6 18 \text{x}g7 \text{x}g7 19 \text{e}5 \text{w}d6 20 \text{h}x\text{c}6 \text{bxc}6 (3b). Beliavsky-Bacrot, Albert (2) 1999: 1 d4 d5 2 c4 c6 3 \( \text{g}f3 \text{g}f6 4 \text{c}3 e6 5 \text{g}5 h6 6 \text{h}h4 dxc4 7 e4 g5 8 \text{g}3 b5 9 \text{e}2 \text{b}d7 10 \text{d}5 b4 11 \text{x}d6 bxc3 12 \text{exd}7+ \text{w}x\text{d}7 13 \text{w}c2 g4 14 \text{d}d1 \text{w}b7 15 \text{e}5 (3c).

10) 1 e4 c5 2 \( \text{g}f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 \text{xd}4 \text{f}6 5 \text{c}3 g6 6 \text{e}3 \text{g}7 7 f3 0-0 8 \text{w}d2 \text{c}6 9 0-0 \text{xd}4 10 \text{xd}4 \text{e}6 11 \text{b}1 (10a).

12) Gallagher-Huss, Bad Ragaz 1994: 1 e4 c6 2 d4 d5 3 \( \text{g}f3 dxe4 4 \text{x}e4 \text{d}7 5 \text{g}5 \text{e}6 6 \text{d}3 \text{g}6 7 \text{f}3 \text{d}6 8 c3 0-0 9 0-0 h6 10 \text{d}e4 \text{x}e4 11 \text{x}e4 e5 12 \text{x}e8 \text{e}1 13 \text{e}1 \text{exd}4 14 \text{w}x\text{e}8+ \text{w}x\text{e}8 15 \text{w}x\text{d}4 \text{c}5 16 \text{w}h4 (12a).

16) 1 e4 c5 2 \( \text{g}f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 \text{xd}4 \text{f}6 5 \text{c}3 a6 6 \text{c}4 e6 7 \text{b}3 b5 8 0-0 \text{e}7 9 f4 0-0 10 e5 \text{d}xe5 11 \text{e}3 (16a).

19) One of the likely routes to Diagram 19b is 1 e4 c5 2 d3 3 exd5 \text{w}x\text{d}5 4 \text{f}6 5 \text{f}3 e6 6 \text{d}3 \text{c}6 7 0-0 \text{xd}4 8 \text{c}xd4 \text{e}7 9 \text{c}3 \text{w}d8 10 \text{e}1 0-0 11 a3 \text{b}6 12 \text{c}2 \text{b}7 13 \text{w}d3 (19b).

23) Gallagher-Campora, Biel 1990 was the same as Gallagher-Balashov up until 20... \text{e}6 21 \text{d}f1 f4 22 \text{w}x\text{d}8+ \text{w}x\text{d}8 23 \text{e}7 f3 24 \text{g}x\text{f}3 \text{c}4 25 \text{w}x\text{e}5 \text{a}xe5 26 \text{w}x\text{d}8 \text{a}xb2 27 \text{b}1 \text{d}4 28 \text{w}x\text{b}7 \text{d}5 29 \text{b}3 \text{b}3 30 axb3 \text{g}8 31 \text{g}2 \text{f}7 32 \text{f}4 \text{e}6 33 \text{f}3 \text{f}5 34 \text{c}7 \text{g}1 35 \text{h}h2 36 \text{c}4 g5 37 \text{b}8 38 b4 \text{g}x\text{f}4 39 b5 \text{a}x\text{b}5 40 \text{c}xb5 \text{e}6 41 b6 \text{d}5 42 \text{w}x\text{f}4 1-0.

25) Karpov-Kasparov, New York/Lyons Wch (11) 1990: 1 d4 \text{f}6 2 c4 g6 3 \text{c}3 \text{g}7 4 e4 d5 5 \text{f}3 0-0 6 \text{e}2 e5 7 \text{c}3 \text{exd}4 8 \text{xd}4 \text{e}8 9 f3 c6 10 \text{w}d2 d5 11 \text{exd}5 \text{cxd}5 12 0-0 \text{c}6 13 c5 (25a).

26) Ponomariov-Babula, Elista OL 1998: 1 e4 c5 2 \( \text{g}f3 \text{c}6 3 c3 d5 4 \text{exd}5 \text{w}x\text{d}5 5 d4 \text{g}4 6 \text{e}2 cxd4 7 \text{cxd}4 e6 8 h3 \text{h}5 9 \text{c}3 \text{w}a5 10 d5 \text{exd}5 11 \text{\text{c}4 \text{a}2 12 \text{w}x\text{e}2+ \text{e}7 13 \text{a}x\text{c}6 \text{bxc}6 14 0-0 \text{f}8 (26a).

29) Marshall-Ed.Lasker, New York 1924: 1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 \( \text{c}c3 c5 4 \text{cxd}5 \text{	ext{d}3 \text{c}6 6 g3 \text{c}6 7 \text{g}2 \text{e}6 8 0-0 \text{e}7 9 \text{d}x\text{c}5 \text{a}x\text{c}5 10 \text{g}5 d4 11 \text{a}x\text{f}6 \text{x}f6 12 \text{d}e4 \text{e}7 13 \text{a}x\text{c}5 \text{x}c5 14 \text{a}1 \text{b}6 15 \text{g}5 \text{e}5 (29b).

31) Anand-Topalov, Dortmund 1996: 1 e4 c5 2 \( \text{g}f3 e6 3 \text{c}3 a6 4 \text{d}4 \text{cxd}4 5 \text{c}xd4 \text{c}6 6 \text{e}2 d6 7 0-0 \text{f}6 8 \text{e}3 \text{e}7 9 f4 0-0 10 a4 \text{w}c7 11 \text{h}1 \text{e}8 12 \text{f}3 \text{a}5 (31a).

33) Kosten-Gallagher, London (L.A.R.A.) 1979: 1 e4 c5 2 \( \text{g}f3 d6 3 d4 \text{cxd}4 4 \text{xd}4 \text{f}6 5 \text{d}3 a6 6 \text{g}e5 e7 7 f4 b5 8 e5 \text{dxe}5 9 \text{f}xe5 \text{w}c7 10 \text{\text{d}2 \text{e}d7 11 0-0 \text{b}7 12 \text{g}4 \text{w}e5 13 \text{a}x\text{b}5 \text{a}x\text{b}5 14 \text{a}h1 \text{h}5 15 \text{w}h4 \text{w}c5 16 \text{a}x\text{e}6 \text{f}xe6 17 \text{w}f4 e5 18 \text{w}f5 \text{e}7 19 \text{w}g6+ \text{d}8 20 \text{e}3 \text{w}b4 21 \text{x}g7 \text{e}8 22 \text{w}x\text{e}5 \text{c}8
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

35) Van Wely-I. Sokolov, Belgrade ECC 1999: 1 d4 ∆f6 2 c4 e6 3 ∆f3 d5 4 ∆c3 ∆bd7 5 cxd5 exd5 6 ∆g5 ∆e7 7 e3 0-0 8 ∆d3 ∆e8 9 0-0 ∆f8 10 ∆c2 c6 11 h3 g6 (35a).

38) Kasparov-Topalov, Wijk aan Zee 1999: 1 e4 d6 2 d4 ∆f6 3 ∆c3 g6 4 g4 h5 5 e5 ∆bd7 6 f4 e4 7 dxe4 d5 8 ∆e2 ∆xe4 9 ∆xe4 ∆c5 10 h3 ∆g4 11 ∆e3 ∆xg2 12 ∆xg2 f5 13 exf5 ∆f5 14 h4 g5 15 ∆e2 h6 16 ∆h5+ ∆g6 17 ∆xg6 fxg6 18 ∆xg6+ ∆h7 19 ∆xh6+ ∆g8 20 ∆xg8+ ∆xg8 21 h5 ∆f8 22 ∆xg6 ∆c6 23 ∆b3 (38a).

39) Timman-I. Sokolov, Dortmund 1999: 1 c4 e5 2 ∆c3 ∆c6 3 ∆f3 f5 4 d4 e4 5 ∆g5 ∆b4 6 g3 ∆f6 7 d3 ∆e5 8 ∆b3 ∆c7 9 ∆g2 h6 10 ∆f3 ∆e7 11 ∆e2 ∆b6 12 h3 0-0 13 g4 h5 14 h4 g4 15 ∆g5+ ∆g6 16 ∆f4 ∆e7 (39a).

40) Sokko-Maciejewski, Warsaw 1997: 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 exd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆e3 e6 7 f3 ∆e7 8 ∆d2 ∆c6 9 g4 0-0 10 0-0-0 ∆xd4 11 h4 b5 12 h5 ∆b7 13 g5 ∆d7 14 b3 (40a).

45) Gallagher-A. Sokolov, Swiss League 1996: 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 d6 6 g3 h6 7 h4 ∆c6 8 ∆g1 h5 9 ∆xh6 10 ∆xh6 11 ∆d2 ∆f7 12 f3 c5 13 a3 h4 14 0-0-0 ∆h5 15 ∆xf7 16 ∆f5 17 b4 (45a).

53) Tal-Velimirovic, USSR-Yugoslavia 1979: 1 c4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆g5 e6 7 f4 ∆b7 8 ∆c4 b5 (57a). 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆g5 e6 7 f4 ∆b7 8 ∆c4 b5 (57a). 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆g5 e6 7 f4 ∆b7 8 ∆c4 b5 (57a).

57) Matanovic-Gufeld, Skopje 1969: 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆g5 e6 7 f4 ∆b7 8 ∆c4 b5 (57a). 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆g5 e6 7 f4 ∆b7 8 ∆c4 b5 (57a). 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆f6 5 ∆c3 a6 6 ∆g5 e6 7 f4 ∆b7 8 ∆c4 b5 (57a).

62) Gallagher-Jansa, Royan 1989: 1 e4 c5 2 ∆f3 e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 ∆xd4 ∆c6 5 ∆c3 ∆c6 7 f4 d6 8 ∆e2 ∆e7 9 ∆d2 0-0 10 0-0-0 a6 11 g4 d5 12 e5 ∆d7 13 h4 ∆b6 14 h5 ∆a5 (62a). D.Holmes-Hebden, British Ch (Plymouth) 1989: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 ∆xf4 g5 4 h4 g4 5 ∆e5 ∆f6 6 d4 d6 7 ∆d3 ∆xe4 8 ∆xe2 ∆e7 9 ∆xf4 ∆c6 10 0-0-0 0-0-0 0-0-0 (62c).

64) Speelman-A. Martin, British Ch 1982: 1 ∆f3 ∆f6 2 c4 g6 3 g3 ∆g7 4 ∆g2 d6 5 0-0-0-0 b3 e5 7 ∆b2 c5 8 ∆c3 ∆c6 9 d3 h6 10 e3 ∆f5 11 h3 ∆d7 12 h2 ∆ab8 13 ∆d2 g5 14 ∆xd1 a6 (64a).

66) Z.Rahman-Gallagher, British Ch (Scarborough) 1999: 1 c4 g6 2 e4 ∆g7 3 d4 d6 4 ∆c3 ∆f6 5 ∆f3 0-0 6 ∆e2 e5 7 0-0-0-0 a6 8 ∆g5 h6 9 ∆h4 ∆e8 10 ∆xf6 ∆xf6 11 c5 ∆g7 12 ∆xa6 bxa6 13 dxe5 dxe5 14 ∆d5 ∆d8 15 ∆a4 ∆b8 16 ∆fd1 ∆xb2 17 ∆xa3 ∆b8 18 c6 ∆e8 19 ∆c5 ∆g4 20 ∆xa7 ∆xf3 21 gxf3 ∆g5+ 22 ∆h1 ∆h5 23 ∆d3 ∆b2 24 ∆f1 ∆e8 (66b).
67) Anand-Lautier, Biel 1997: 1 e4 d5 2 exd5 wxd5 3 Qc3 Qa5 4 d4 Qf6 5 Qf3 c6 6 Qc4 Qf5 7 e5 e6 8 g4 Qg6 9 h4 Qbd7 10 Qxd7 Qxd7 11 h5 Qe4 12 Qh3 Qg2 13 Qe3 Qb6 14 Qd3 Qd5 15 f3 Qb4 16 Qf2 Qxc3 17 Qxc3 Qwc3 18 Qb1 Qxd4 19 Qxb7 Qd8 (67a).

68) Sax-Gallagher, Mitropa Cup (Baden) 1999: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 a6 6 Qe3 e5 7 Qb3 Qe6 8 f3 Qe7 9 Qd2 0-0 10 0-0-0 (68a).

Watson-Kuczynski, Bundesliga 1995: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 a6 6 Qe3 e5 7 Qb3 Qe6 8 f3 Qe7 9 Qd2 0-0 10 0-0-0 Qc7 12 h4 b5 13 h5 b4 14 Qd5 Qxd5 15 exd5 Qb6 16 Qxb6 Qxb6 17 Qd3 a5 18 g5 Qd7 19 Qdg1 a4 (68c).

74) Zotnikov-Gallagher, Arosa 1996: 1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 e4 d5 5 Qe2 dxe4 6 dx e4 Qc6 7 Qbd2 Qe8 8 Qxc6 Qxc6 9 Qxe4 Qxe4 10 Qxe4 Qxc5 11 Qe5 (74a).

75) Baburin-Gallagher, London Mind Sports 1999: 1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 e4 d5 5 f3 a6 6 Qe2 Qe6 7 Qf4 Qd5 8 Qg5 9 Qxg5 Qxf4 10 Qxf4 Qxe4 11 Qxe4 Qxc5 12 Qe5 (75a).

77) Xu Jun-Ivanchuk, Lucerne Wcht 1993: 1 d4 d5 2 c4 e6 3 Qc3 d6 4 e4 Qbd7 5 f3 Qe8 6 Qf4 Qg6 7 Qe5 Qc6 8 Qxf6 Qxf6 9 Qxc6 Qxc6 10 Qxe5 Qxe5 11 Qxc4 Qd7 12 Qe2 (77b).

78) J.Polgar-Anand, Dos Hermanas 1999: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 a6 6 Qe3 e6 7 g4 e5 8 Qf5 g6 9 g5 Qxf5 10 exf5 d5 11 Qe3 Qd6 12 Qg3 Qxe4 13 Qxe4 Qxe4 14 Qxe4 Qxe4 15 Qe5 (78a).

19) Riemersma-Van der Wiel, Dutch Ch 1993: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 a6 6 Qe3 e5 7 Qb3 Qc7 8 Qe2 Qe6 9 f4 Qxf4 10 Qxf4 Qc6 11 Qd4 Qxd4 12 Qxd4 Qc8 13 0-0-0 0-14 Qg3 Qa5 15 Qg5 (79b).

79) Riemersma-Van der Wiel, Dutch Ch 1993: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 a6 6 Qe3 e5 7 Qb3 Qc7 8 Qe2 Qe6 9 f4 Qxf4 10 Qxf4 Qc6 11 Qd4 Qxd4 12 Qxd4 Qc8 13 0-0-0 0-14 Qg3 Qa5 15 Qg5 (79b).

80) Reinderman-Van Wely, Dutch Ch 1999: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 a6 6 Qe3 e5 7 Qb3 Qc7 8 Qe2 Qe6 9 f4 Qxf4 10 Qxf4 Qc6 11 Qd4 Qxd4 12 Qxd4 Qc8 13 0-0-0 0-14 Qg3 Qa5 15 Qg5 (79c).

81) 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qf6 5 Qc3 g6 6 Qe3 Qg7 7 f3 Qc6 8 Qd2 0-0 and now: a) 9 0-0-0 d5 10 Qb1 (81a); b) 9 Qc4 Qd7 10 0-0-0 Qc8 11 Qb3 Qe5 (81b).

85) Bobotsov-Tal, Varna student OL 1958: 1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 e4 d6 5 f3 0-0 6 Qe3 Qbd7 7 Qd2 c5 8 Qge2 a6 9 0-0-0 Qa5 10 Qb1 b5 (85a).

Gavrikov-Landenbergue, Silvaplana 1997: 1 Qf3 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 e4 d5 4 Qe2 Qe5 5 Qd2 Qa6 6 Qc3 Qc4 7 0-0-0 0-8 Qe3 Qd6 9 Qb3 Qe6 10 Qxf6 Qc8 11 f5 Qd7 12 Qg4 Qe5 (79c).

88) Rogozenko-Gallagher, Bundesliga 1998/9: 1 d4 Qf6 2 c4 g6 3 Qc3 Qg7 4 Qg2 0-0 5 Qc3 d6 6 Qf3 Qbd7 7 0-0 e5 8 e4 a6 9 Qc2 exd4 10 Qxd4 Qe8 11 Qde2 Qb8 12 a4 a5 13 b3 Qc5 14 Qa3 b6 15 Qad1 h5 16 Qd4 Qd7 17 Qfe1 h4 (88a).

90) Svidler-Kasparov, Linares 1999: 1 e4 c5 2 Qf3 d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 Qxd4 Qc6 5 Qb5 Qd7 6 Qx6 Qxc6 7 Qc3 Qf6 8 Qg5 e6 9 0-0-0 Qe7 10 Qhe1 0-0-11
94) Fischer-Petrosian, Buenos Aires Ct (7) 1971: 1 e4 c5 2 \(\Delta f3\) e6 3 d4 cxd4 4 \(\Delta xd4\) a6 5 \(\Delta d3\) \(\Delta c6\) 6 \(\Delta xc6\) bxc6 7 0-0 d5 8 c4 \(\Delta f6\) 9 cxd5 exd5 10 exd5 exd5 11 \(\Delta c3\) \(\Delta e7\) 12 \(\Delta a4+\) \(\Delta d7\) 13 \(\Delta e1\) \(\Delta xa4\) 14 \(\Delta xa4\) \(\Delta e6\) 15 \(\Delta e3\) 0-0 16 \(\Delta c5\) \(\Delta fe8\) 17 \(\Delta xe7\) \(\Delta xe7\) 18 b4 \(\Delta f8\) 19 \(\Delta c5\) \(\Delta c8\) 20 f3 \(\Delta ea7\) 21 \(\Delta e5\) \(\Delta d7\) (90a).

95) Gallagher-Conquest, British Ch (Blackpool) 1988: 1 e4 e5 2 f4 exf4 3 \(\Delta f3\) d6 4 d4 g5 5 h4 g4 6 \(\Delta g1\) f3 7 gxf3 \(\Delta e7\) 8 \(\Delta e3\) \(\Delta xh4+\) 9 \(\Delta d2\) c5 10 \(\Delta c1\) cxd4 11 \(\Delta xd4\) \(\Delta f6\) 12 \(\Delta d2\) \(\Delta c6\) 13 \(\Delta c3\) \(\Delta e6\) 14 \(\Delta d5\) \(\Delta xd5\) 15 exd5 \(\Delta e5\) 16 f4 \(\Delta d7\) 17 \(\Delta h5\) \(\Delta e7\) 18 \(\Delta e2\) g3 19 a4 a6 20 \(\Delta a3\) \(\Delta c8\) 21 \(\Delta d4\) \(\Delta g8\) 22 \(\Delta xh7\) \(\Delta f5\) 23 \(\Delta h5\) \(\Delta xd4\) 24 \(\Delta xf7\) \(\Delta b6\) (95a). Klundt-Gallagher, Royan 1988: 1 e4 c5 2 \(\Delta f3\) d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 \(\Delta xd4\) \(\Delta f6\) 5 \(\Delta c3\) g6 6 \(\Delta c4\) \(\Delta g7\) 7 \(\Delta e2\) g6 8 g4 \(\Delta e3\) b5 9 g5 \(\Delta fd7\) 11 \(\Delta d2\) \(\Delta b7\) 12 a3 \(\Delta c5\) 13 \(\Delta f3\) \(\Delta e7\) 14 h4 e5 15 \(\Delta de2\) \(\Delta bd7\) 16 b4 exf4 17 \(\Delta d4\) \(\Delta e5\) 18 \(\Delta xe5\) dxe5 19 bxc5 \(\Delta xc5\) 20 \(\Delta d5\) \(\Delta xd5\) 21 exd5 (95c).

96) A few weeks later in Anand-I.Sokolov, Dortmund 1999 White could only manage a draw after 14...f6!? 15 \(\Delta xc7\) 0-0 16 \(\Delta xe7\) \(\Delta xf3\) 17 \(\Delta xg7+\) \(\Delta h8\) 18 \(\Delta h6\) \(\Delta xg4+\) 19 \(\Delta g3\) \(\Delta xd4\), etc.

99) 1 e4 c5 2 \(\Delta f3\) d6 3 d4 cxd4 4 \(\Delta xd4\) \(\Delta f6\) 5 \(\Delta c3\) g6 6 \(\Delta c4\) \(\Delta g7\) 7 0-0 0-0 8 \(\Delta e1\) \(\Delta c6\) 9 h3 \(\Delta d7\) 10 \(\Delta g5\) \(\Delta xd4\) 11 \(\Delta xd4\) h6 12 \(\Delta d2\) \(\Delta g4\) 13 \(\Delta d3\) \(\Delta e5\) 14 \(\Delta e2\) (99a).

100) Nijboer-Van der Sterren, Dutch Ch (Rotterdam) 1999: 1 e4 e5 2 \(\Delta f3\) \(\Delta f6\) 3 d4 \(\Delta xe4\) 4 \(\Delta d3\) d5 5 \(\Delta xe5\) \(\Delta d7\) 6 \(\Delta xd7\) \(\Delta xd7\) 7 0-0 \(\Delta d6\) 8 c4 c6 9 cxd5 \(\Delta h5\) 0-0 11 \(\Delta xd5\) \(\Delta c6\) 12 \(\Delta h5\) g6 13 \(\Delta h3\) \(\Delta g5\) 14 \(\Delta g4\) \(\Delta e6\) 15 \(\Delta h6\) \(\Delta e8\) 16 \(\Delta c3\) \(\Delta xd4\) 17 \(\Delta ad1\) \(\Delta e5\) 18 f4 f5 19 \(\Delta h3\) \(\Delta f6\) 20 \(\Delta g5\) \(\Delta xg5\) 21 \(\Delta c4+\) \(\Delta h8\) 22 \(\Delta xg5\) \(\Delta b6\) 23 \(\Delta h1\) (100a).
## Index of Themes, Players and Openings

Numbers refer to pages.

### Themes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Theme</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Anastasia's Mate</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approach play</td>
<td>45, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attack at the right place</td>
<td>39, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Back-rank weakness</td>
<td>10, 11, 61, 65, 78, 90, 112, 117, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishop play</td>
<td>15, 26, 67, 84, 88, 110, 111, 118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishop sacrifices</td>
<td>17, 18, 19, 23, 26, 28, 46, 53, 56, 58, 73, 86, 107, 109, 111, 117, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blitz chess</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boden's Mate</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bravery</td>
<td>86, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculation</td>
<td>54, 84, 85, 91, 108, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Castling</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computers</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dark-squared attacks</td>
<td>22, 24, 38, 57, 78, 80, 102, 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deflection</td>
<td>10, 30, 32, 35, 54, 72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development advantage</td>
<td>79, 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discovered checks</td>
<td>14, 24, 25, 50, 59, 89, 93, 108, 112, 115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endgames</td>
<td>66, 68, 70, 87, 93, 98, 100, 110, 111, 113, 114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exchange sacrifices</td>
<td>26, 38, 43, 52, 59, 76, 96, 97, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fishbone pawn</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Flexibility</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forks</td>
<td>13, 19, 43, 64, 72, 100, 108, 109, 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek Gift</td>
<td>17, 18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King-hunt</td>
<td>32, 54, 55, 69, 81, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>King play</td>
<td>33, 37, 39, 47, 66, 70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knight sacrifices</td>
<td>21, 31, 35, 56, 63, 69, 72, 78, 79, 92, 99, 106, 109, 112, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Legall's Mate</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Line-opening sacrifices</td>
<td>26, 53, 61, 62, 67, 69, 72, 85, 88, 89, 91, 105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lolli's Mate</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mate on the h-file</td>
<td>16, 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minority attack</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opposite-coloured bishops</td>
<td>57, 102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pawn-grabbing</td>
<td>44, 46, 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pawn promotion</td>
<td>65, 68, 70, 81, 85, 94, 112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pawn-storm</td>
<td>45, 56, 75, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pins</td>
<td>28, 29, 53, 62, 77, 86, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Powerful knights</td>
<td>21, 31, 38, 58, 78, 83, 118, 121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preventive sacrifices</td>
<td>39, 43, 63, 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prophylaxis</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queen sacrifices</td>
<td>10, 11, 12, 13, 15, 20, 22, 24, 25, 26, 29, 30, 33, 58, 59, 61, 70, 74, 80, 84, 85, 99, 103, 108, 112, 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rook and knight tandem</td>
<td>20, 33, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rooks' pawns</td>
<td>40-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rook play</td>
<td>23, 87, 89, 93, 98, 100, 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rook sacrifices</td>
<td>11, 13, 16, 22, 25, 27, 31, 32, 35, 50, 54, 57, 61, 66, 70, 98, 103, 115, 120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Smothered mate</td>
<td>12, 21, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stalemates</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Studies</td>
<td>70, 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transformation</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zwischenzug</td>
<td>21, 49, 78, 90, 99, 112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Players

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Player</th>
<th>Pages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acebal</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams, E.</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adams, M.</td>
<td>90, 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adianto</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ady</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anand</td>
<td>32, 45, 84, 86, 95, 116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anić</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arkell, K.</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arkell, S.</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashley</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX OF THEMES, PLAYERS AND OPENINGS

Atalik 94
Babula 39
Baburin 92
Bacrot 13
Balashov 34
Barta 27
Beliaevsky 13, 66
Bellon 59
Bergez 24
Berlovich 100
Berry 65
Bobotsov 103
Boden 15
Bologan 109
Botvinnik 28
Bronstein 11, 32, 98
Brzozka 98
Čabrilo 27
Candela 38
Capablanca 28
carton 107
Christiansen 100
Conquest 102, 115, 121
Curran 13
Cvitan 58
Damljanović 14
Daniliuk 97
Datu 74
David 79, 119
de Firmian 16
Dizdar 30
Dizdarević 30
Dolmatov 64
Doré 12
Emms 89, 119
Epishin 58
Fioramonti 53
Fischer 21, 47, 114
Ftačnik 58
Fuglsang 97
Gallagher 11, 13, 14, 23, 24, 27, 34,
48-50, 53, 57, 60, 61, 62, 65, 66, 67,
68, 71, 72, 74, 79, 82, 83, 85, 91, 92,
93, 94, 97, 100, 102, 104-7, 108, 113,
115, 117, 121
Gavrikov 103
Gelfand 32, 86
Gligorić 60
Gufeld 73
Gunawan 59
Gurevich, D. 52
Habibi 11
Hahn 57
Hall 16
Hebden 78
Hodgson 33, 52, 79, 88, 89, 105, 106,
109
Holmes 78
Horvath, Cs. 66
Howell 109
Hübner 87
Huss 23
Illescas 38
Ivanchuk 31, 32, 77, 94
Jackson, O. 65
Jacobs 107
Jansa 78
Kacheishvili 74
Karpov 10, 38, 86, 87, 100, 109, 116
Kasimdzhanov 63
Kasparov 10, 25, 38, 54, 100, 110, 117,
118
Kiss 67
Klauser 121
Klinger 65
Klundt 115
Konstantinopolsky 70
Korchnoi 28, 64
Korneev 117
Korolkov 70
Kosten 48
Kotov 60
Kramnik 14, 90, 109, 114, 116
Kubbel 113
Kupreichik 44
Landenbergue 21, 103
Lane 94
Lanka 73
Lasker, Ed. 43
Lautier 84
Levitt 103
Libeau 106
Lutz 11
Maciejewski 56
Malakhov 97
Marco, M. 15
Marcoli 53
Marshall 43
Martin 80, 103
Matanović 73
McDonald 66
Mikenas 11
Miles, A. 29, 94
Miles, J. 82
Milošević 89
Miralles 104
Morozevich 112
Morrison 113
Neverov 14
Nijboer 120
Nunn 59, 113
Oll 33
Pelletier 68
Petrosian 13, 76, 114
Petursson 60, 97, 112
Piket 36
Plaskett 49, 50
Polgar, J. 95
Ponomariov 39
Prasad 109
Psakhis 88
Raetsky 67
Rahman 83
Ratner 32
Rechel 73
Reinderman 18, 97
Renet 29
Reshevsky 76
Reust 107
Riemersma 96
Röder, M. 21
Rogozenko 108
Rosenberger 27
Sadvakasov 63
Salgado 93
Sax 85
Schulder 15
Seirawan 33
Shaked 105
Shirov 18, 111
Short 25, 36, 47, 66, 100, 117, 118
Siegel 97
Smirin 71, 72, 87
Socko 56
Sokolov, A. 61
Sokolov, I. 51, 55, 90
Spassky 13, 21, 47, 76
Speelman 32, 80
Stohl 52
Sutovsky 66
Svidler 15, 31, 110, 114
Tal 69, 103
Tatai 28
Teplitsky 65
Timman 47, 55, 90
Tischbierek 120
Topalov 45, 54, 77, 90, 111, 118
Torre, C. 10
Tukmakov 67, 82
Vaganian 44
Van der Sterren 120
Van der Wiel 52, 96
Van Wely 51, 97
Vehi Bach 62
Velimirović 69
Wahls 120
Webster 87
Xu Jun 94
Young 12
Zotnikov 91

Openings
Alekhine 79
Benoni 59
Caro-Kann 23, 81, 82
Dutch 64
English 12, 69, 77, 80, 88
French 40, 57, 104-7
Giucopo Piano 43
King's Gambit 13, 34-7, 79, 115
King's Indian 38, 41, 58, 60, 67, 71, 72, 91, 92, 93, 103, 108
Nimzowitsch 29
Petroff 116, 120
Philidor 19, 29
Pirc/Modern 19, 41, 79
Queen's Gambit 51
Scandinavian 84
Sicilian 19, 21, 26, 27, 39, 45, 48-50, 56, 61, 62, 63, 73, 78, 85, 95, 96, 97, 99, 110, 112, 114, 115, 118, 119
Trompowsky 44, 52, 68
Do you find yourself in good attacking positions, but then fail to land the killer blow? Or do you find it hard to decide where to attack when you have a promising position? Do you sometimes analyse inefficiently, and so get caught by tricks you could have foreseen?

If so, this book can help. Grandmaster Gallagher, a well-known attacking player, provides a plethora of ideas to help you root out the enemy king whenever you have the chance. He shows how to mate an exposed king, how to and what to sacrifice, and how to spot key weaknesses.

However, there is much more to attacking play than sacrifices and mating combinations. This book contains tips on how to develop your attack, and explains typical aggressive build-ups. Gallagher also reveals when it is wiser to go for a positional onslaught, with guidance on the queenside minority attack and other less violent attacking methods.

Joe Gallagher is an English grandmaster who has lived in Switzerland for many years. He is a regular member of the Swiss national team. He has established a reputation as a top-class chess writer, in particular for his work on aggressive openings such as the King's Gambit, Sicilian and King's Indian Defence.